PA
2087
.B83
1873

LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

HENRY M. BRUNS, LL. D.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap. ..... Copyright No. .....

Shelf PA2057
.B83 1873

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

LATIN GRAMMAR

A

COMPENDIOUS MANUAL

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

By HENRY M. BRUNS, LL. D.

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE IN THE COLLEGE OF CHARLESTON.

LOUISVILLE
JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY
PUBLISHERS

PA2087
.B83
1873

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1873, by
JOHN P. MORTON & COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

ELECTROTYPED BY
ROBERT ROWELL,
LOUISVILLE, KY.

PREFACE.

The design of this little work—originally prepared for the use of the pupils of the High-school of Charleston, and now enlarged—is so obvious that it needs no explanation, and its utility is so evident that it needs no commendation; and while it is specially intended for *school-boys*, and contains nothing with which they ought not to be perfectly familiar, it will be found a convenient HAND-BOOK for those who have passed that grade.

The answers, it will be seen, are so constructed as to be independent of the questions; so that the book can be used for continuous recitation or catechetically, as the teacher may prefer.

In the Prosody the metres have been confined to hexameters and the metres of Horace, as when these are mastered, and the rules of prosody have been thoroughly committed and their application understood, other metres can be readily acquired as they present themselves.

The form in which the Rules for the Gender of Nouns is introduced will prove a master-key to that part of Latin Grammar. The rude jingle in which these rules are couched will only make them more attractive to boys, who will, for that very reason, commit them with more readiness and pleasure, and remember them more perfectly than if they

possessed all the smoothness and elegance of the poetry of Tennyson or Longfellow.

The Synoptical Tables in the Appendix, showing case and tense-endings of the several declensions and conjugations, will prove very useful to the pupil, and will greatly aid him to obtain a comprehensive and exact conception of Latin; for if he has thoroughly learned the tabulated case and tense-terminals, by affixing them to the proper root a word may be easily carried through all its inflections.

The book has not been divided into lessons *purposely*, as this is best left to the teacher, who can apportion them according to the capacity and advancement of his pupils.

CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.

LETTERS 9
SYLLABLES 11
ACCENT 11
QUANTITY 12
WORDS 12
SUBSTANTIVES, OR NOUNS 13
Person and Gender 13
Gender Rules 14
Number and Case 15
Declension 16
General Rules for Declension 16
First Declension 17
Second Declension 18
Vocative of Proper Names, etc 21
Third Declension 22
Exceptions in Declension 27
Irregular Nouns 28
Greek Nouns 28
Fourth Declension 29
Fifth Declension 31
Compound Nouns 32
Variable Nouns 33
ADJECTIVES 34
First and Second Declensions 34
Third Declension 36
Numeral Adjectives 39
Correlatives 43
Numeral Adverbs 43
Comparison of Adjectives 44
Irregular and Defective Comparison 44
PRONOUNS 47
Adjective Pronouns 49
Possessives 49
Demonstratives 49
Relative Pronouns 51
Interrogative Pronouns 52
Indefinite Pronouns 53

VERBS 54
Voice 56
Moods 56
Tenses 57
English of the Subjunctive Mood 59
English of the Imperative Mood 60
Participles 60
Gerunds—Gerundives—Supines 61
Conjugation 62
The Irregular Verb "Sum" 67
First Conjugation 69
Second Conjugation 74
Third Conjugation 77
Fourth Conjugation 83
Deponent Verbs 86
Neuter Passive Verbs 86
Periphrastic Conjugation 87
Irregular Verbs 88
Defective Verbs 94
Impersonal Verbs 96
ADVERBS 99
Derivation of Adverbs 99
Comparison of Adverbs 101
PREPOSITIONS 102
Inseparable Prepositions 103
CONJUNCTIONS 104
INTERJECTIONS 105

SYNTAX.

SENTENCES 106
GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX 108
GOVERNMENT OF THE OBLIQUE CASES 108
CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT 109
CONCORD 110
A Substantive with a Substantive 110
Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive 111
Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent 112
Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative 113
GOVERNMENT OF THE GENITIVE CASE 114
The Genitive governed by a Noun 114
Genitive governed by an Adjective used as a Substantive 115
The Genitive governed by Adjectives 116
The Genitive governed by Verbs 117
GOVERNMENT OF THE DATIVE CASE 118
The Dative governed by Nouns 118
The Dative governed by Adjectives 119
The Dative governed by Verbs 119
Special Rules 120
Impersonal Verbs 121
Verbs which govern Two Datives 122

ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS....122
GOVERNMENT OF THE VOCATIVE CASE....123
GOVERNMENT OF THE ABLATIVE CASE....123
The Ablative governed by Nouns....123
The Ablative governed by Adjectives....124
The Ablative with the Comparative Degree....124
Ablative Absolute....125
Ablative of Price....126
Ablative of Measure or Distance....126
Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, etc....127
Limiting Expressions—Ablative—Accusative....127
The Ablative governed by Verbs....128
VERBS WHICH GOVERN TWO CASES....129
Accusative and Genitive....129
Accusative and Dative....130
Two Accusatives....131
Accusative and Ablative....131
Passive Verbs....132
PLACE—NAMES OF TOWNS....133
TIME....135
CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS....135
GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS....136
SYNTAX OF THE VERB....137
Moods....137
Sequence of Tenses....138
Subjunctive Mood after Tenses....139
Subjunctive Mood after the Relative....140
Construction of the Imperative....140
Construction of the Infinitive....141
Historical Infinitive....143
Oratio Directa and Oratio Obliqua....143
Participles....144
Gerunds....144
Gerundives....145
Supines....146
CONJUNCTIONS....147

PROSODY.

GENERAL RULES....150
SPECIAL RULES....151
INCREASE OF NOUNS....152
INCREASE OF VERBS....154
PENULT SYLLABLES....155
FINAL SYLLABLES....157
DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS....160
VERSIFICATION....161
Cæsural Pause....161
Heroic Hexameter....162
Figures of Scanning....163
Figures of Etymology....165

VERSIFICATION—(*Continued*).
Figures of Syntax....166
Different Kinds of Metre....169
Metres of Horace....171
Index to Metres of Horace....176

APPENDIX.

SYNOPTICAL TABLES....177
Genders....177
Declensions—Nouns....177
Declensions—Adjectives....178
GENDER RULES....179
From the Signification....179
First Declension....180
From the Ending—Second Declension....180
Third Declension....181
Fourth Declension....183
Fifth Declension....183
IRREGULAR AND AUXILIARY VERBS....183
SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS....186
LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL VERBS....190
First Conjugation....190
Second Conjugation....191
Third Conjugation....195
Fourth Conjugation....206
DEPONENT VERBS....207

ROMAN ARMY....210
TIME....211
Day and Night....211
Months....211
ROMAN MONEY....212
MEASURES....212

A MANUAL OF LATIN GRAMMAR.

ETYMOLOGY.

LETTERS.

1. What does Latin Grammar teach?

LATIN GRAMMAR teaches how to speak and write the Latin language correctly.

2. What are the letters of the Latin language?

The LETTERS of the Latin language are the same as those of the English, excepting *k* and *w*; *w* is not used at all, and *k* is used only in words that are strictly Greek.

3. How are these letters divided?

These letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

4. Name the vowels.

The VOWELS are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*.

5. Name the consonants.

The CONSONANTS are *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *x*, *z*; or, more briefly, all but the vowels.

6. How are the consonants divided?

The consonants are divided into *mutes*, *liquids*, and *double consonants*.

7. Which are the mutes, and why are they so called?

The MUTES are *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c*, *k*, *g*, and are so called because, in combination with other letters, they tend to *interrupt* or *stop* the sound of the voice.

8. Which are the liquids, and why are they so called?

The LIQUIDS are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and are so called because of the readiness with which they *flow* into other sounds, and the ease with which they are *changed*, one for another, in combining with other consonants.

9. Which are the double consonants, and why are they so called?

The DOUBLE CONSONANTS are *j*, *x*, *z*, and they are so called because they are each equal to two consonants; viz., *j* to *dg*, *x* to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

10. How are *h* and *s* classed?

H is not regarded as a letter, but only as a rough breathing; and *s* is called a *sibilant*, or *hissing*, letter.

11. How are consonants classified as to sounds?

Consonants are classified as to sounds,

1. Into *c* sounds; viz., *c*, *g*, *q*.
2. Into *p* sounds; viz., *p*, *b*, *f*, *v*.
3. Into *t* sounds; viz., *t*, *d*.

12. What are letters of the same sound called, and what is their property?

Letters of the same sound are called *cognate* letters, and their property is that of being readily changed, one into another, in combination with other consonants.

13. What is a diphthong?

A DIPHTHONG is the union of two vowels in one sound.

14. How are diphthongs divided?

Diphthongs are divided into *proper* and *improper*.

15. What is a proper diphthong?

A PROPER DIPHTHONG is one in which both the vowels are sounded (see 17).

16. What is an improper diphthong?

An IMPROPER DIPHTHONG is one in which only one of the vowels is sounded (see 18).

17. How many proper diphthongs are there?

There are *three proper diphthongs:* viz., *au, eu, ei;* as in *aurum, euge, hei.*

18. How many improper diphthongs are there?

There are *two improper diphthongs:* viz., *æ* and *œ;* as in *pennæ, cœtus.*

SYLLABLES.

19. What is a syllable?

A SYLLABLE is a distinct sound, uttered by a single impulse of the voice, forming the whole or part of a word.

20. What is a word of one syllable called? Of two syllables? Of three syllables? etc.

A word of *one* syllable is called a *monosyllable;* of *two* syllables, a *dissyllable;* of *three* syllables, a *trisyllable;* and of *more* than three syllables, a *polysyllable.*

21. What is the last syllable of a word called?

The *last syllable* of a word is called the *ultimate* or *final.*

22. What is the syllable before the last called?

The syllable before the last is called the *penultimate* or *penult.*

23. What is the syllable preceding the penult called?

The syllable preceding the penult is called the *antepenult.*

ACCENT.

24. What is accent?

ACCENT is a special *stress* or *force of voice* on a particular syllable of a word, by which that syllable is distinguished from the rest.

25. What are the three rules for accenting Latin words?

The three rules for accenting Latin words are:

1. In words of *two syllables,* the accent is always on the *first;* as in *pu'er, ca'nis, do'mus.*

2. In words of *more* than two syllables, if the *penult* is *long,* the accent is on the *penult;* as in *honō'res, amī'cus.*

3. If the *penult* is *short,* the accent is on the *antepenult;* as in *dom'ĭnus, hom'ĭnes, op'ĕra.*

QUANTITY.

26. What is quantity?

QUANTITY is the *measure* of a syllable as respects the *time* required to pronounce it. Syllables are either *long*, *short*, or *common*, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

27. What are the four general rules for quantity?

The four general rules for the quantity of syllables are:

1. A diphthong is long; as, *au* in *aurum*, *æ* in *famæ*.

2. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *i* in *fŏlĭum*, *e* in *dĕorum*.

3. A vowel before two single consonants or one double consonant (9) is long; as, *o* in *mōllis*, *a* in *ālтus*, *e* in *rēx*.

4. A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common in poetry, but in prose is short; as, *volūcris* or *volŭcris*.

NOTE 1.—A short syllable is marked ⏑; a long, ¯ or ^; ^ is also sometimes placed over a contracted syllable; as *deûm* for *deorum*.

NOTE 2.—When a penult syllable is not marked, it comes under one of the above four rules.

WORDS.

28. What is a primitive word?

A PRIMITIVE WORD is one that is derived from no other word; as, *pŭer*, a boy; *bŏnus*, good; *păter*, a father.

29. What is a derivative word?

A DERIVATIVE WORD is one that is derived from another; as, *puerītia*, boyhood (from *puer*); *bonitas*, goodness (from *bŏnus*); *patērnus*, paternal (from *pater*).

30. What is a simple word?

A SIMPLE WORD is one that is not combined with another; as, *pius*, pious; *ăger*, a field; *dies*, a day.

31. What is a compound word?

A COMPOUND WORD is one that is combined with another; as, *impius* (*in* and *pius*), *agricultūra* (*ăger* and *cultūra*), *meridies* (*medius* and *dies*).

SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

32. What is a substantive or noun?

A SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *Cicĕro, Rōma, hŏmo, lĭber.*

33. What is a proper noun?

A PROPER NOUN is the name of an individual person or place; as, *Cicĕro, Rōma.*

34. What is a common noun?

A COMMON NOUN is a name applied to all things of the same sort; as, *vir*, a man; *dŏmus*, a house; *lĭber*, a book.

35. What is a collective noun, or noun of multitude?

A COLLECTIVE NOUN, or *noun of multitude*, is one which includes many in the singular number; as, *popŭlus*, a people; *exercĭtus*, an army; *classis*, a fleet.

36. What is a patronymic noun?

A PATRONYMIC NOUN is one derived from the name of a father or ancestor; as, *Priamĭdes*, a son or descendant of *Priam; Æacĭdes*, a descendant of *Æăcus.*

37. What is an abstract noun?

An ABSTRACT NOUN is the name of a *quality* or *state;* as, *bonĭtas*, goodness, is the abstract of *bŏnus*, good; *ebriĕtas*, drunkenness, is the abstract of *ebrius*, drunk.

PERSON AND GENDER.

38. How many persons have nouns, and how are they distinguished?

A noun has *three persons:* first, second, and third. The *first* speaks, the *second* is spoken to, and the *third* is spoken of.

39. How many genders are there?

There are three genders: *masculine*, denoting the male sex; *feminine*, denoting the female; and *neuter*, denoting neither

male nor female. Nouns are sometimes said to be of *common* and *doubtful* genders.

40. When is a noun said to be of common gender?

A noun is of *common gender* when it denotes either a male or a female; as, *conjux*, a husband or wife; *bos*, an ox or a cow.

41. When is a noun said to be of doubtful gender?

A noun is of *doubtful gender* when it is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine; as, *fīnis*, an end, masculine or feminine.

42. What is the distinction between the application of the terms common gender and doubtful gender?

The term *common gender* is applied to animate things which have sex, *doubtful gender* to inanimate things without sex.

43. Is the gender of a noun in Latin determined strictly by its being masculine or feminine, or neither?

The gender of a Latin noun is determined sometimes *naturally* by its signification, but for the most part *grammatically* by its termination.

Gender Rules.

44. Repeat the following general rules for the gender of nouns determined by their signification:

I. What nouns denote a *he* are *masculine;*
But every *she* as *female* we decline.

II. *Months*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *mountains* pass for hēs;
Trees, *countries*, *cities*, *isles*, and *herbs* are shēs,
With *gems*, and *ships* that sail the seas.

Note.—For exceptions, see Appendix. In the Appendix will also be found general rules for the gender of nouns determined by their ending.

NUMBER AND CASE.

45. How many numbers have nouns?

Nouns have two numbers: the *singular*, denoting one; and the *plural*, denoting more than one.

46. What is case?

CASE is the relation in which a declinable word stands to some other word or words in a sentence.

47. How is case indicated?

The cases of nouns are indicated by a *change of termination*, called declension.

48. How many cases have Latin nouns?

Latin nouns have *six cases*; viz., *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*.

49. What does the nominative case denote?

The *nominative case* denotes simply *the name* of the person or thing of which something is affirmed.

50. What does the genitive case denote, and what is its sign?

The *genitive case* denotes *origin*, *possession*, or *fitness*. Its English sign is *of*.

51. What does the dative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *dative case* denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is done. Its English sign is *to* or *for*.

52. What does the accusative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *accusative case* denotes the person or thing *acted upon* by something else. It is Englished, except in the case of the personal and relative pronouns, like the nominative.

53. What does the vocative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *vocative case* is used to denote the *person or thing addressed*. Its English sign is *O* or *thou* in the singular, and *O* or *ye* in the plural.

54. What does the ablative case denote, and what is its sign?

The *ablative case* denotes that *from which* something is *taken away*, or *by* or *with which* something *is done*. Its sign is *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, etc.

DECLENSION.

55. What is declension?

DECLENSION is a *change of termination*, whereby the case and number of a declinable word are indicated.

56. What classes of words are declinable, and what indeclinable?

Nouns, *pronouns*, and *adjectives*, including *participles*, may be declined. *Adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections* are indeclinable.

57. What are indeclinable words sometimes called?

Indeclinable words are sometimes called *particles*.

58. What is the change which verbs undergo called?

The change which verbs undergo is called *conjugation*.

59. How many declensions are there?

There are *five declensions*, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declension.

60. How are the declensions distinguished from each other?

The declensions are distinguished from each other by *the termination of the genitive singular*. The first has *æ*, the second *ī*, the third *ĭs*, the fourth *ûs*, and the fifth *ēi*.

61. What is the root of a noun, and how is it obtained?

The *root* of a noun is the part which remains unchanged in declension. It is obtained from the *genitive singular* by cutting off the termination or final syllable of the word.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

62. Repeat the four general rules of declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

2. The vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

4. Proper names have no plural, except several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

FIRST DECLENSION.

63. How many terminations has the first declension?

The first declension has *four terminations;* viz., *a, e, as, es.* Only those in *a* are Latin; the rest are Greek.

64. What is the gender of nouns of the first declension?

Nouns of the first declension ending in *a* and *e* are *feminine;* those in *as* and *es* are *masculine.*

65. Repeat the gender rule for the first declension.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a,*
And pass for *feminines;* as, *hæc mūsa.*

NOTE.—In the gender rules, when a noun is said to have *hic,* it is masculine; *hæc,* feminine; *hoc,* neuter.

66. What are the case terminations of the first declension?

The *case terminations* of the first declension are seen in the following table of

TERMINATIONS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	ă,	Nom.	æ,
Gen.	æ,	Gen.	ārum,
Dat.	æ,	Dat.	is,
Acc.	am,	Acc.	as,
Voc.	ă,	Voc.	æ,
Abl.	ā.	Abl.	is.

67. What is the difference in *quantity* of the final *a* in the nominative and vocative, and the *a* in the ablative?

The final ă in the nominative and vocative is short; in the ablative, ā is long, as is shown by the accents.

Decline PENNA, a *feather* or *pen.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. Penn-ă, *a pen;*	N. Penn-æ, *pens;*
G. Penn-æ, *of a pen;*	G. Penn-ārum, *of pens;*
D. Penn-æ, *to* or *for a pen;*	D. Penn-is, *to* or *for pens;*
Ac. Penn-am, *a pen;*	Ac. Penn-as, *pens.*
V. Penn-ă, *O* or *thou pen;*	V. Penn-æ, *O* or *ye pens;*
A. Penn-â, *in, with, by a pen.*	A. Penn-is, *in, with, by pens.*

In like manner decline the following nouns, repeating the rule for the gender, and giving the *root* of each (61):

Āl-a, *a wing.*	Mens-a, *a table.*
Aquĭl-a, *an eagle.*	Regīn-a, *a queen.*
Căs-a, *a cottage.*	Rŏs-a, *a rose.*
Făb-a, *a bean.*	Turb-a, *a crowd.*

68. What nouns in this declension make *ābus* instead of *īs* in the dative and ablative plural, and why?

The following nouns, *asĭna*, a she ass; *dea*, a goddess; *ĕqua*, a mare; *fīlia* and *nāta*, a daughter; and *mūla*, a she mule, make *ābus* instead of *īs* in the dative and ablative plural to distinguish them from masculines in *us* of the second declension.

69. Is this change always made?

Dea and filia always make *ābus;* the others generally make *īs.*

70. How are Greek nouns declined?

Decline nouns in *as, es* (if Greek), and in *e*;
As *Ænēas, Anchīses,* and *Penelŏpe.*

GREEK NOUNS.

N. Ænē-as,	N. Anchīs-es,	N. Penelŏp-e,
G. Ænē-æ,	G. Anchīs-æ,	G. Penelŏp-es,
D. Ænē-æ,	D. Anchīs-æ,	D. Penelŏp-æ,
Ac. Ænē-am *or* an,	Ac. Anchīs-en,	Ac. Penelŏp-en,
V. Ænē-ă,	V. Anchīs-e,	V. Penelŏp-e,
Ab. Ænē-ā.	Ab. Anchīs-e.	Ab. Penelŏp-e.

SECOND DECLENSION.

71. How many terminations has the second declension?

The second declension has *seven terminations*, viz.:

FIVE MASCULINE: *er, ir, ur, us,* and *os* (*os* Greek).
TWO NEUTER: *um* and *on* (*on* Greek).

72. Are there no feminine nouns in the second declension?

The feminine nouns in the second declension are few in number, and chiefly derived from the Greek. The following

Latin nouns are feminine: *alvus*, the belly; *hŭmus*, the ground; *cŏlus*, a distaff; and *vannus*, a winnowing-fan.

73. Repeat the gender rule for masculines, second declension.

(*a*) The second ends in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, and *us*,
And should be masculine, like *domĭnus*.

Repeat the gender rule for feminine nouns.

(*b*) Greek nouns in *us* are mostly feminine found;
With *alvus*, the belly, and *hŭmus*, the ground,
Together with *cŏlus*, a woman's distaff,
And *vannus*, a fan to winnow out chaff.

Repeat the gender rule for neuter nouns.

(*c*) All nouns in *um* with neuters place,
And substantives that vary in no case;
Add *vīrus*, juice or poison, and *pelăgus*, the sea;
But *vulgus* hic et hoc its gender claims to be.

74. When the *tree* ends in *us*, in this declension, what is the termination of the noun denoting its *fruit*, and its gender?

The *tree* ends in *us*, and is *feminine*; the *fruit* ends in *um*, and is *neuter*. Thus:

Mālus, an apple-tree; *mālum*, an apple.
Pĭrus, a pear-tree; *pĭrum*, a pear, etc. But
Fīcus means both a fig-tree and a fig.

75. What are the case terminations of the second declension?

The case terminations of the second declension are seen in the following table of

TERMINATIONS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

	Masculine (*and* Fem.)		Neuter.	
	singular.	plural.	singular.	plural.
N.	-er, -ir, -ur, -us,	-ī,	N., Ac., V. -um,	-ă,
G.	-ī,	-ōrum,	G. -ī,	-ōrum,
D.	-ō,	-īs,	D., Ab. -ō.	-īs.
Ac.	-um,	-ōs,		
V.	(*like nom.*), -e,	-ī,	See General Rules, (62, 1st).	
Ab.	-ō.	-īs.		

Decline DOMINUS, a *lord* or *master*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. domĭn-us, *a lord;*	N. domĭn-i, *lords;*
G. domĭn-i, *of a lord;*	G. domin-ōrum, *of lords;*
D. domĭn-o, *to* or *for a lord;*	D. domĭn-is, *to* or *for lords;*
Ac. domĭn-um, *a lord;*	Ac. domĭn-os, *lords;*
V. domĭn-e, *O* or *thou lord;*	V. domĭn-i, *O* or *ye lords;*
Ab. domĭn-o, *in, with, by a lord.*	Ab. domĭn-is, *in, with, by lords.*

76. What is to be noticed as to the vocative of nouns in *us?*

The nominative in *us*, in the second declension, makes the vocative in *e*.

77. How do nouns in *er*, *ir*, and *ur* make the genitive?

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, and *ur* make the genitive by *adding i* to the nominative; as, *puer*, *pueri*, a boy; *vir*, *viri*, a man. But nouns in *er* sometimes *drop e* in the genitive; as, *lĭber*, *lĭbri*, a book; *āger*, *agri*, a field; *āper*, *apri*, a boar.

Decline PUER, a *boy*, and AGER, a *field*, giving the rule for *gender*, and the *root* of each (44, 73 *a*, 61):

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. puer,	puĕr-i,	N. ager,	agr-i,
G. puĕr-i,	puer-ōrum,	G. agr-i,	agr-ōrum,
D. puĕr-o,	puĕr-is,	D. agr-o,	agr-is,
Ac. puĕr-um,	puĕr-os,	Ac. agr-um,	agr-os,
V. puer,	puĕr-i,	V. ager,	agr-i,
Ab. puĕr-o.	puĕr-is.	Ab. agr-o.	agr-is.

Decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender and the root of each:

Hort-us, *a garden.*	Gĕner, *a son-in-law.*	Lĭber, *a book.*
Fluvi-us, *a river.*	Sŏcer, *a father-in-law.*	Āper, *a boar.*
Vent-us, *the wind.*	Lucĭfer, *the morning star.*	Cancer, *a crab.*

78. What are the only nouns in *ir* of this declension?

Vir, a man, and its compounds (as *Decēmvir*) are the only nouns in *ir* of the second declension.

79. Is there any noun in *ur* in this declension?

The only word in *ur* of the second declension is the masculine gender of the adjective *sătur*, full.

Decline the neuter noun REGNUM, a *kingdom*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	regn-um, *a kingdom;*	regn-a, *kingdoms;*
G.	regn-i, *of a kingdom;*	regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms;*
D.	regn-o, *to* or *for a kingdom;*	regn-is, *to* or *for kingdoms;*
Ac.	regn-um, *a kingdom;*	regn-a, *kingdoms;*
V.	regn-um, *O* or *thou kingdom;*	regn-a, *O* or *ye kingdoms;*
Ab.	regn-o, *in, with, by a kingdom.*	regn-is, *in, with, by kingdoms.*

Decline the following neuter nouns, giving the general rule for declension (62, 1st), the rule for the gender (73 *c*), and the *root* of each:

Bell-um, *war.*	Ōv-um, *an egg.*	Præli-um, *a battle.*
Foli-um, *a leaf.*	Coll-um, *a neck.*	Tect-um, *a roof.*

VOCATIVE OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

80. How do proper names in *ius* form their vocative?

Proper names in *ius* drop *us* in the *vocative;* as, *Virgilius, Virgĭli; Horatius, Horāti*; except *Pius*, which makes *Pie.*

81. What common nouns make the vocative in *i*?

Filius, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make the vocative *fīli* and *gĕni.*

82. What is the vocative of *deus* and *meus?*

Deus makes *deus*, and *meus, mi* or *meus*, in the vocative.

83. What does *deus* make in the plural?

Deus, in the plural, more frequently makes *dii* and *diis* than *dei* and *deis. Dii* and *diis* are sometimes contracted into *dî* and *dîs.*

84. Is any other case in the second declension subject to contraction?

The genitive plural *ōrum* is sometimes contracted into *ûm;* as, *deûm, liberûm, Danaûm*, for *deōrum, liberōrum, Danaōrum.*

Decline DEUS, a *god*, making the contractions.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N. and V.	de-us,	N. and V.	de-i, dii, *or* dî,
G.	de-i,	G.	de-ōrum, *or* deûm,
D. and Ab.	de-o,	D. and Ab.	de-is, di-is, *or* dîs,
Ac.	de-um.	Ac.	de-os.

85. How are Greek nouns of this declension declined?

Greek nouns in *os* and *on* of the second declension are declined as follows:

	ANDROGEOS, *Masc.*	DELOS, *Fem.*
N.	Androge-os,	Dēl-os,
G.	Androge-o, *or* i,	Dēl-i,
D.	Androge-o,	Dēl-o,
Ac.	Androge-o, *or* on,	Dēl-on,
V.	Androge-os,	Dēl-e,
Ab.	Androge-o.	Dēl-o.

BARBITON, a lyre, *Neut.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	barbĭt-on,	barbĭt-a,
G.	barbĭt-i,	barbĭt-ōn,
D. and Ab.	barbĭt-o,	barbĭt-is.

THIRD DECLENSION.

86. Are there many nouns of the third declension?

Nouns of the third declension are more numerous than those of all the other declensions put together. They are of all genders, and generally have more syllables in the oblique cases than in the nominative.

87. What are the terminations of the third declension?

The terminations of the third declension are too many to be enumerated. The *final letters* are thirteen; viz., *a*, *e*, *o*, *u*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*.

88. Repeat the general rule for masculine nouns of the third declension.

The third has males in *er*, *or*, *os*, *n*, *o*;
Long words are feminine in *do* and *go*.

89. Repeat the general rule for feminine nouns.

Third nouns in *io* mostly *hæc* procure,
With *as*, *aus*, *es*, *is*, *x*, and *s* impure.

90. What does the word "*impure*" mean in grammar?

Impure in grammar means *after a consonant.* Thus, *s* impure means *s* after a consonant; as, *s* in *urbs*, *gens.*

91. What is the general rule for neuters in the third declension?

Nouns ending in *c*, *a*, *l*, *e*, *t* (calet), *ar*, *men*, *ur*, and *us*,
May with the neuter kind be placed by us.

92. What are the case terminations of the third declension?

The case terminations of the third declension may be seen in the following table of

TERMINATIONS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

	Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.		
	singular.	plural.	singular.	plural.
N.	(*various*),	-es,	N., Ac., V. (*various*),	-a, *or* -ia,
G.	-is,	-um (ium),	G. -is,	-um, -ium,
D.	-i,	-ĭbus,	D. -i,	-ĭbus.
Ac.	-em,	-es,	Ab. -e, *or* -i.	
V.	(*like nom.*),	-es,		
Ab.	-e, *or* i.	-ĭbus.		

93. What would it be well to note in this declension?

The third declension has only three terminations in the plural; viz., *one* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative; *one* for the genitive; and *one* for the dative and ablative.

94. How may the formation of the genitive singular be learned?

The formation of the genitive singular is best learned *by practice.*

Decline Sermo, *a speech*, Masc.; also, Color, *a color.*

	singular.	plural.		singular.	plural.
N.	sermo,	sermōn-es,	N.	color,	colōr-es,
G.	sermōn-is,	sermōn-um,	G.	colōr-is,	colōr-um,
D.	sermōn-i,	sermon-ĭbus,	D.	colōr-i,	color-ĭbus,
Ac.	sermōn-em,	sermōn-es,	Ac.	colōr-em,	colōr-es,
V.	sermo,	sermōn-es,	V.	color,	colōr-es,
Ab.	sermōn-e.	sermon-ĭbus.	Ab.	colōr-e.	color-ĭbus.

After the same manner, decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender and the root of each:

Carbo, *a coal.*	Hŏnor, *honor.*
Leo, *a lion.*	Lăbor, *labor.*

95. What is the first class of nouns that make *ium* in the genitive plural?

Nouns in *is* and *es* which do *not increase** in the genitive singular make *ium* in the genitive plural.

Decline Rupes, *a rock,* and Turris, *a tower,* Fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	rūp-es,	rūp-es,	N.	turr-is,	turr-es,
G.	rūp-is,	rūp-ium,	G.	turr-is,	turr-ium,
D.	rūp-i,	rup-ĭbus,	D.	turr-i,	turr-ĭbus,
Ac.	rūp-em,	rūp-es,	Ac.	turr-em,	turr-es,
V.	rūp-es,	rūp-es,	V.	turr-is,	turr-es,
Ab.	rūp-e.	rup-ĭbus.	Ab.	turr-e.	turr-ĭbus.

After the same manner, decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each:

Nŭbes, *a cloud.*	Āvis, *a bird.*
Vulpes, *a fox.*	Classis, *a fleet.*

96. What is the second class of nouns that make *ium* in the genitive plural?

Nouns of one syllable in *as* and *is*, and those in *s* and *x* *after a consonant*, make *ium* in the genitive plural.

Decline Vas, *a surety;* Lis, *a lawsuit;* Pars, *a part;* and Nox, *night;* giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each:

	SINGULAR (MASC.)	PLURAL.		SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.
N.	văs,	văd-es,	N.	līs,	līt-es,
G.	văd-is,	văd-ium,	G.	līt-is,	līt-ium,
D.	văd-i,	văd-ĭbus,	D.	līt-i,	līt-ĭbus,
Ac.	văd-em,	văd-es,	Ac.	līt-em,	līt-es,
V.	văs,	văd-es,	V.	līs,	līt-es,
Ab.	văd-e.	văd-ĭbus.	Ab.	līt-e.	līt-ĭbus.

* By the word "*increase,*" usually employed in Prosody, is meant "to take an added number of syllables." (See Prosody, 18.)

	SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.
N.	pars,	part-es,
G.	part-is,	part-ium
D.	part-i,	part-ĭbus,
Ac.	part-em,	part-es,
V.	pars,	part-es,
Ab.	part-e.	part-ĭbus,

	SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.
N.	nox,	noct-es,
G.	noct-is,	noct-ium,
D.	noct-i,	noct-ĭbus,
Ac.	noct-em,	noct-es,
V.	nox,	noct-es,
Ab.	noct-e.	noct-ĭbus.

After the same manner, decline URBS, *a city*, and ARX, *a citadel*, giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each.

97. What do nouns in *as* and *ns* of more than one syllable make in the genitive plural?

Nouns in *as* and *ns* of more than one syllable make sometimes *um*, sometimes *ium*, and sometimes both in the genitive plural.

Decline CIVĬTAS, *a state*, and PARENS, *a parent*.

	SINGULAR (FEM.)	PLURAL.
N.	civĭtas,	civitāt-es,
G.	civitāt-is,	civitātum,
D.	civitāt-i,	civitat-ĭbus,
Ac.	civitāt-em,	civitāt-es,
V.	civĭtas,	civitāt-es,
Ab.	civitāt-e.	civitat-ĭbus.

	SINGULAR (MASC. AND FEM.)	PLURAL.
N.	parens,	parent-es,
G.	parent-is,	parent{-um, -ium,
D.	parent-i,	parent-ĭbus,
Ac.	parent-em,	parent-es,
V.	parens,	parent-es,
Ab.	parent-e.	parent-ĭbus.

Repeat the general rule for the declension of neuter nouns (61, 1st), and decline the following, giving the rule for the gender and the *root* of each: *ŏpus*, a work; *căput*, a head; *carmen*, a song; *ĭter*, a journey.

OPUS, *a work*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	ŏpus,	N., Ac., V.	opĕr-a,
G.	opĕr-is,	G.	opĕr-um,
D.	opĕr-i,	D. and Ab.	oper-ĭbus.
Ab.	opĕr-e.		

CAPUT, *a head*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	caput,	N., Ac., V.	capĭt-a,
G.	capĭt-is	G.	capĭt-um,
D.	capĭt-i,	D. and Ab.	capit-ĭbus.
Ab.	capĭt-e.		

CARMEN, *a song*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	carmen,	N., Ac., V.	carmĭn-a,
G.	carmĭn-is,	G.	carmĭn-um,
D.	carmĭn-i,	D. and Ab.	carmin-ĭbus.
Ab.	carmĭn-e.		

ITER, *a journey*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	ĭter,	N., Ac., V.	itinĕr-a,
G.	itinĕr-is,	G.	itinĕr-um,
D.	itinĕr-i,	D. and Ab.	itiner-ĭbus.
Ab.	itinĕr-e.		

After the same manner decline

Corp-us, -ŏris, *a body.*	Fĕm-ur, -ŏris, *a thigh.*
Lăt-us, -ĕris, *a side.*	Flum-en, -ĭnis, *a river.*

98. What is the peculiarity of neuter nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*?

Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar* make the ablative singular in *i*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *ia*, and the genitive plural in *ium*.

Decline SEDILE, *a seat;* ANIMAL, *an animal;* and CALCAR, *a spur.*

SEDILE, *a seat*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	sedīle,	N., Ac., V.	sedīl-ia,
G.	sedīl-is,	G.	sedīl-ium,
D. and Ab.	sedīl-i.	D. and Ab.	sedil-ĭbus.

ANIMAL, *an animal*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	anĭmal,	N., Ac., V.	animāl-ia,
G.	animāl-is,	G.	animāl-ium,
D. and Ab.	animāl-i.	D. and Ab.	animal-ĭbus.

CALCAR, *a spur*, Neut.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N., Ac., V.	calcar,	N., Ac., V.	calcār-ia,
G.	calcār-is,	G.	calcār-ium,
D. and Ab.	calcār-i.	D. and Ab.	calcar-ĭbus.

99. What are the exceptions to this rule?

The names of towns, as *Prœneste*, and the following neuters in *ar* have *e* in the ablative; viz., *bacchar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hēpar*, the liver; *jŭbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; also, *sal*, salt. *Măre*, the sea, has either *e* or *i*—usually *i*.

Exceptions in Declension.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

100. Repeat the list of nouns in *is* which have *im* in the accusative singular.

The following nouns in *is* have *im* in the accusative singular:

Amussis, *f.*, *a measure* or *rule.*
Būris, *f.*, *the beam of a plow.*
Cannăbis, *f.*, *hemp.*
Cucŭmis, *m.*, *a cucumber.*
Gummis, *f.*, *gum.*
Mephītis, *f.*, *a strong smell.*
Rāvis, *f.*, *hoarseness.*
Sināpis, *f.*, *mustard.*
Sĭtis, *f.*, *thirst.*
Tussis, *f.*, *a cough.*
Vis, *f.*, *strength.*

101. Repeat the list of those which have *em* or *im*.

The following nouns in *is* have *em* or *im* in the accusative singular:

Aquālis, *c.*, a *water-pot.*
Clāvis, *f.*, *a key.*
Cūtis, *f.*, *a skin.*
Febris, *f.*, *a fever.*
Lentis, *or* Lens, *f.*, *a lentil.*
Nāvis, *f.*, *a ship.*
Pelvis, *f.*, *a basin.*
Puppis, *f.*, *the stern of a ship.*
Restis, *f.*, *a rope.*
Secūris, *f.*, *an axe.*
Sementis, *f.*, *a sowing.*
Strigĭlis, *f.*, *a curry-comb.*
Turris, *f.*, *a tower.*

102. In what do the two foregoing classes of nouns make their ablative?

Nouns which have *im* in the accusative have *i* in the ablative; those which have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*.

Irregular Nouns.

103. Decline the following irregular nouns:

	Jupiter.	Vis, *strength, power*, F.		Bos, *an ox* or *cow*, M. and F.	
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	Jupĭter,	vis,	vīres,	bos,	bŏves,
G.	Jŏvis,	vis,	virium,	bŏvis,	boum,
D.	Jŏvi,	——	virĭbus,	bŏvi,	bōbus, *or* būbus,
Ac.	Jŏvem,	vim,	vīres,	bŏvem,	bŏves,
V.	Jupĭter,	vis,	vīres,	bos,	bŏves,
Ab.	Jŏve.	vi.	virĭbus.	bŏve.	bōbus, *or* būbus.

Greek Nouns—Third Declension.

104. Decline the following Greek nouns:

	Lampas, *a lamp.*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	lamp-as,	-ădes,
G.	lamp {-ădis, -ădos,}	-ădum,
D.	lamp-ădi,	-adĭbus,
Ac.	lamp {-ădem, -ăda,}	-ădes, -ădas,
V.	lamp-as,	-ădes,
Ab.	lamp-ăde,	-adĭbus.

	Troas, *a Trojan.*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	Tro-as,	-ădes,
G.	Tro {-ădis, -ădos,}	-ădum,
D.	Tro-ădi,	{-adĭbus, -ăsi, -ăsin,
Ac.	Tro {-ădem, -ăda,}	-ădes, -ădas,
V.	Tro-as,	-ădes,
Ab.	Tro-ăde,	{-ădibus, -ăsi, -ăsin.

	Heros, *a hero.*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	hēros,	herōis,
G.	herōis,	herōum,
D.	herōi,	heroĭbus,
Ac.	{herōem, herōa,}	herōes, herōas,
Ab.	herōe.	heroĭbus.

	Poema, *a poem*, Neut.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	poēma,	poemăta,
G.	poemătis,	poemătum,
D.	poemăti,	poematĭbus, *or* -ătis,
Ac.	poēma,	poemăta,
V.	poēma,	poemăta,
Ab.	poemăti.	poematĭbus, *or* -ătis.

105. What is the form of the name *Dido?*

Dido is declined both as a Latin and Greek form; thus,

N.	Dido,	*or*	Dido,
G.	Didōnis,	*or*	Didûs,
D.	Didōni,	*or*	Dido,
Ac.	Didōnem,	*or*	Dido,
V.	Dido,	*or*	Dido,
Ab.	Didōne,	*or*	Dido.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

106. How many terminations has the fourth declension?

The fourth declension has only *two terminations;* viz., *us,* generally masculine, sometimes feminine; and *u,* neuter.

107. Repeat the general rule for the gender of nouns of the fourth declension?

The fourth in *us* are chiefly masculine;
But nouns in *u* as neuters we decline.
Portĭcus, trĭbus, mănus are feminine,
With *cŏlus, fĭcus, dŏmus;* but these three
Both of the second and the fourth may be:
Cupressus, cornus, pīnus, such you'll see.

108. What are the case terminations of the fourth declension?

The case terminations of the fourth declension may be seen in the following table of

TERMINATIONS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

	Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.	
	singular.	plural.	singular.	plural.
N.	-ŭs,	-ūs,	-ū,	-ua,
G.	-ûs,	-ŭum,	-ûs,	-uum,
D.	-ui,	-ĭbus,	-ū,	-ĭbus,
Ac.	-um,	-ūs,	-ū,	-ua,
V.	-ŭs,	-ūs,	-ū,	-ua,
Ab.	-ū.	-ĭbus.	-ū.	-ĭbus.

109. What form does the dative, singular and plural, sometimes take in this declension?

The dative singular sometimes takes the form *u* instead of *ui*, and the plural *ŭbus* instead of *ĭbus*.

110. Repeat the list of nouns that make *ŭbus* in the dative plural.

Acus, arcus, portus, quercus,
Fĭcus, lăcus, artus,
Trĭbus, partus, et *spĕcu,*
Pĕcus adde *vĕru.*

111. What nouns make *ĭbus* or *ŭbus?*

Gĕnu, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonĭtrus*, thunder; and *vĕru*, a spit, make *ĭbus* or *ŭbus*.

Decline FRUCTUS, *fruit*, and CORNU, *a horn*.

FRUCTUS, *fruit*, Mas.		CORNU, *a horn*, Neut.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. fruct-ŭs,	fruct-ūs,	N. corn-u,	corn-ua,
G. fruct-ûs,	fruct-uum,	G. corn-ûs,	corn-uum,
D. fruct-ui,	fruct-ĭbus,	D. corn-u,	corn-ĭbus,
Ac. fruct-um,	fruct-ūs,	Ac. corn-u,	corn-ua,
V. fruct-ŭs,	fruct-ūs,	V. corn-u,	corn-ua,
Ab. fruct-u.	fruct-ĭbus.	Ab. corn-u.	corn-ĭbus.

112. What is the difference in the quantity of *us* final in the nominative and genitive of the fourth declension?

Us final in the nominative is short, in the genitive long. Plural cases in *us* are also long.

In like manner, decline the following nouns, giving the rule for the gender, and the root of each:

Cantus, *a song.* Mănus, *a hand.*
Currus, *a chariot.* Vĕru, *a spit.*
Portus, *a harbor.* Gĕnu, *a knee.*

113. What is the peculiarity of *dŏmus?*

Dŏmus, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second.

Decline *dŏmus*, giving the rule for the gender, and mentioning the root.

DOMUS, *a house*, Fem.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	dŏm-us,	N.	dŏm-us,
G.	dŏm-ûs, *or* -i,	G.	dom-uum, *or* -ōrum,
D.	dŏm-ui, *or* -o,	D.	dom-ĭbus,
Ac.	dŏm-um,	Ac.	dŏm-us, *or* -os,
V.	dŏm-us,	V.	dŏm-us,
A.	dŏm-o.	A.	dom-ĭbus.

114. What is the difference in signification of *domûs* and *domi* in the genitive singular:

In the genitive singular, *domûs* signifies *of a house*, and *domi* signifies *at home*, or *of home*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

115. How many terminations has the fifth declension?

The fifth declension has only one termination, viz., *es*; as, *res*, a thing; *dies*, a day.

116. What is the gender of nouns of the fifth declension?

All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, which is masculine, and has no plural.

117. Repeat the rule for the gender of nouns of the fifth declension.

The fifth are feminine, and end in *es*;
But one is masculine—*meridies*.

118. Are there many nouns of this declension?

There are only fifty-seven nouns of the fifth declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many want the plural altogether.

119. What are the case terminations of the fifth declension?

The case terminations of the fifth declension may be seen in the following table of

TERMINATIONS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	-es,	Nom.	-es,
Gen.	-ēï,	Gen.	-ērum,
Dat.	-ēï,	Dat.	-ēbus,
Acc.	-em,	Acc.	-es,
Voc.	-es,	Voc.	-es,
Abl.	-ē.	Abl.	-ēbus.

Decline RES, *a thing*, and DIES, *a day*.

RES, *a thing*, Fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	res,	res,
G.	rēï,	rērum,
D.	rēï,	rēbus,
Ac.	rem,	res,
V.	res,	res,
Ab.	re,	rēbus.

DIES, *a day*, Doubt.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	di-es,	di-es,
G.	di-ēï,	di-ērum,
D.	di-ēï,	di-ēbus,
Ac.	di-em,	di-es,
V.	di-es,	di-es,
Ab.	di-e.	di-ēbus.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

120. What is a compound noun?

A compound noun is one compounded either of *two nouns* or of *a noun* and *an adjective*.

121. Of what is *respublica* compounded, and how is it declined?

Respublica, a commonwealth, is compounded of *res*, a thing, and *publĭca*, public or common, and is thus declined:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	res-publĭca.	N.	res-publĭcæ,
G.	reï-publĭcæ,	G.	rerum-publicārum,
D.	reï-publĭcæ,	D.	rebus-publĭcis,
Ac.	rem-publĭcam,	Ac.	res-publĭcas,
V.	res-publĭca,	V.	res-publĭcæ,
Ab.	re-publĭcâ.	Ab.	rebus-publĭcis.

122. Of what is *materfamilias* compounded, and how is it declined?

Materfamilias, a mistress of a family, is compounded of *māter*, a mother, and *familias*, of a family, an old genitive. *Mater* only is declined; *familias* remains unchanged: thus,

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	mater-familias,	N.	matres-familias,
G.	matris-familias,	G.	matrum-familias,
D.	matri-familias,	D.	matrĭbus-familias,
Ac.	matrem-familias,	Ac.	matres-familias,
V.	mater-familias,	V.	matres-familias,
Ab.	matre-familias.	Ab.	matrĭbus-familias.

Decline JUSJURANDUM, *an oath.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	jus-jurandum,	N.	jūra-juranda,
G.	jūris-jurandi,		———
D.	jūri-jurando,		———
Ac.	jus-jurandum,	Ac.	jūra-juranda,
V.	jus-jurandum,	V.	jūra-juranda.
Ab.	jūre-jurando.		———

VARIABLE NOUNS.

123. What is a variable noun?

A variable noun is one which *varies* in *gender* or *declension*, or in both. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous;* those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites.*

124. Mention two of the most common *heteroclites.*

Jugĕrum, an acre, in the singular makes, Gen. *jugĕri* or *-is;* Abl. *jugĕre;* and in the plural, Nom. and Acc. *jugĕra;* Gen. *jugĕrum;* Abl. *jugerĭbus. Vas, vassis*, a vessel, makes the plural *vasa, vasōrum.*

125. The following lines contain the most common *heterogeneous* nouns. Repeat them:

Frēnum and *lŏcus*, with *rastrum* and *jŏcus,*
Have *frēni* and *lŏci*, with *rastri* and *jŏci,*
And *frēna* and *lōca*, with *rastra* and *jŏca.*

ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

126. What is an adjective?

An adjective is a word used to qualify or describe a noun; as, vir *bŏnus*, a *good* man; *pulchra* puella, a *beautiful* girl.

127. Of what declensions are adjectives?

Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

128. How do adjectives of the first and second declensions terminate?

Adjectives of the first and second declensions terminate in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, or in *-er*, *-a*, *-um;* as, *bŏnus*, *bŏna*, *bŏnum*; *tĕner*, *tenĕra*, *tenĕrum*.

Decline BONUS, *good*, and TENER, *tender*.

BONUS, BONA, BONUM, *good*.

	SINGULAR.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	bŏn-us,	bŏn-a,	bŏn-um.
Gen.	bŏn-i,	bŏn-æ,	bŏn-i.
Dat.	bŏn-o,	bŏn-æ,	bŏn-o.
Acc.	bŏn-um,	bŏn-am,	bŏn-um.
Voc.	bŏn-e,	bŏn-a,	bŏn-um.
Abl.	bŏn-a,	bŏn-â,	bŏn-um.

	PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	bŏn-i,	bŏn-æ,	bŏn-a.
Gen.	bon-ōrum,	bon-ārum,	bon-ōrum.
Dat.	bŏn-is,	bŏn-is,	bŏn-is.
Acc.	bŏn-os,	bŏn-as,	bŏn-a.
Voc.	bŏn-i,	bŏn-æ,	bŏn-a.
Abl.	bŏn-is,	bŏn-is,	bŏn-is.

TENER, TENERA, TENERUM, *tender*.

	SINGULAR.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	tĕner,	tenĕr-a,	tenĕr-um.
Gen.	tenĕr-i,	tenĕr-æ,	tenĕr-i.
Dat.	tenĕr-o,	tenĕr-æ,	tenĕr-o.
Acc.	tenĕr-um,	tenĕr-am,	tenĕr-um.
Voc.	tĕner,	tenĕr-a,	tenĕr-um.
Abl.	tenĕr-o,	tenĕr-â,	tenĕr-o.

	PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	tenĕr-i,	tenĕr-æ,	tenĕr-a.
Gen.	tener-ōrum,	tener-ārum,	tener-ōrum.
Dat.	tenĕr-is,	tenĕr-is,	tenĕr-is.
Acc.	tenĕr-os,	tenĕr-as,	tenĕr-a.
Voc.	tenĕr-i,	tenĕr-æ,	tenĕr-a.
Abl.	tenĕr-is,	tenĕr-is,	tenĕr-is.

129. Are all adjectives in *er* declined like *tĕner*?

Most adjectives in *er* drop *e* in the declension; as,

ATER, ATRA, ATRUM, *black*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	āter,	atr-a,	atr-um.	atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-a.
G.	atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-i.	atr-ōrum,	atr-ārum,	atr-ōrum.
D.	atr-o,	atr-æ,	atr-o.	atr-is,	atr-is,	atr-is.
Ac.	atr-um,	atr-am,	atr-um.	atr-os,	atr-as,	atr-a.
V.	āter,	atr-a,	atr-um.	atr-i,	atr-æ,	atr-a.
Ab.	atr-o,	atr-â,	atr-o.	atr-is,	atr-is,	atr-is.

Like *bŏnus*, decline *altus*, high; *cārus*, dear; *dūrus*, hard.
Like *tĕner*, decline *asper*, rough; *lĭber*, free; *mĭser*, miserable.
Like *āter*, decline *pĭger*, lazy; *pulcher*, fair; *măcer*, lean.

130. Mention the adjectives which vary in the genitive and dative singular from the above forms.

Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* make the genitive singular in *ius* and the dative in *i*; namely:

Alius, *another* (of many).
Alter, *the other* (of two).
Neuter, *neither.*
Nullus, *no one, none.*
Sōlus, *alone.*
Tōtus, *the whole.*
Ullus, *any.*
Unus, *one.*
Uter, *which of the two,* and its compounds (see Pros., ex. 2).

Decline TOTUS, of this form, and note that the penult of the genitive is long.

TOTUS, TOTA, TOTUM, *whole.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	tōt-us,	tōt-a,	tōt-um.	tōt-i,	tōt-æ,	tōt-a.
G.	tot-īus,	tot-īus,	tot-īus.	tot-ōrum,	tot-ārum,	tot-ōrum.
D.	tōt-i,	tōt-i,	tōt-i.	tōt-is,	tōt-is,	tōt-is.
Ac.	tōt-um,	tōt-um,	tōt-um.	tōt-os,	tōt-as,	tōt-a.
V.	tōt-e,	tōt-a,	tōt-um.	tōt-i,	tōt-æ,	tōt-a.
Ab.	tōt-o,	tōt-â,	tōt-o.	tōt-is,	tōt-is,	tōt-is.

THIRD DECLENSION.

131. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided?

Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes:

First—Those which have only *one termination* for all the genders; as, *fēlix*, happy; *prūdens*, prudent.

Second—Those which have *two terminations*, one for the masculine and feminine, and one for the neuter; as, *mītis, mītis, mīte*, mild; *brĕvis, brĕvis, brĕve*, short.

Third—Those which have *four terminations*, two for the masculine, one for the feminine, and one for the neuter; as, *ācer* or *acris, acris, acre; celĕber* or *celĕbris, celĕbris, celĕbre.*

132. What does the second class include?

The second class includes all comparatives in *ior, ior, ius;* as, *mitior, mitior, mitius*, more mild or milder.

133. What does the third class include?

The third class includes adjectives which have *two terminations* for the masculine, *one* for the feminine, and *one* for the neuter; as, *acer* or *ācris*, *acris*, *acre*, sharp; *celĕber* or *celĕbris*, *celĕbris*, *celĕbre*, celebrated.

Decline FELIX and PRUDENS, of the first class.

FELIX, *happy* (one termination).

	SINGULAR.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix.
Gen.	felīc-is,	felīc-is,	felīc-is.
Dat.	felīc-i,	felīc-i,	felīc-i.
Acc.	felīc-em,	felīc-em,	felīc-em.
Voc.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix.
Abl.	felīc-e, *or*-i,	felīc-e, *or*-i,	felīc-e, *or*-i.

	PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	felīc-es,	felīc-es,	felīc-ia.
Gen.	felīc-ium,	felīc-ium,	felīc-ium.
Dat.	felic-ĭbus,	felic-ĭbus,	felic-ĭbus.
Acc.	felīc-es,	felīc-es,	felīc-ia.
Voc.	felīc-es,	felīc-es,	felīc-ia.
Abl.	felic-ĭbus,	felic-ĭbus,	felic-ĭbus.

PRUDENS, *prudent* (one termination).

	SINGULAR.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	prūdens,	prūdens,	prūdens.
Gen.	prudent-is,	prudent-is,	prudent-is.
Dat.	prudent-i,	prudent-i,	prudent-i.
Acc.	prudent-em,	prudent-em,	prudent-em.
Voc.	prūdens,	prūdens,	prūdens.
Abl.	prudent-e, *or* -i,	prudent-e, *or* -i,	prudent-e, *or* -i.

	PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia.
Gen.	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium.
Dat.	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus.
Acc.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia.
Voc.	prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia.
Abl.	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus,	prudent-ĭbus.

In like manner, decline *fĕrox*, fierce; *vĕlox*, swift; *ingens*, great; *rĕcens*, fresh.

Decline MITIS, *mild*, and MITIOR, *milder*, of the second class.

MITIS, *mild* (two terminations).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	mīt-is,	-is,	-e.	mīt-es,	-es,	-ia.
G.	mīt-is,	-is,	-is.	mit-ĭum,	-ĭum,	-ĭum.
D.	mīt-i,	-i,	-i.	mit-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.
Ac.	mīt-em,	-em,	-e.	mīt-es,	-es,	-ia.
V.	mīt-is,	-is,	-e.	mīt-es,	-es,	-ia.
Ab.	mīt-i,	-i,	-i.	mit-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.

Comparative, MITIOR, *milder* (two terminations).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	mitior,	mitior,	mitius.	mitiōr-es,	-es,	-a.
G.	mitiōr-is,	-is,	-is.	mitiōr-um,	-um,	-um.
D.	mitiōr-i,	-i,	-i.	mitior-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.
Ac.	mitiōr-em,	-em,	mitius.	mitiōr-es,	-es,	-a.
V.	mitior,	mitior,	mitius.	mitiōr-es,	-es,	-a.
Ab.	mitiōr-e, *or* -i,	-e, *or* -i,	-e, *or* -i.	mitior-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.

In like manner decline *brĕvis*, short; *debĭlis*, weak; *durior*, harder; *melior*, better.

134. How is the comparative *plus*, more, declined?

The comparative *plus*, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is thus declined:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		
	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	plus,	plūr-es,	-es,	-a (-ia).
G.	plūr-is,	plur-ium,	-ium,	-ium.
D.	——	plur-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.
Ac.	plus,	plūr-es,	-es,	-a (-ia).
V.	——	——	——	——
Ab.	plūr-e.	plur-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.

Decline ACER, *sharp*, of the third class.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	ācer, *or* acr-is,	-is,	-e.	acr-es,	-es,	-ia.
G.	acr-is,	-is,	-is.	acr-ium,	-ium,	-ium.
D.	acr-i,	-i,	-i.	acr-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.
Ac.	acr-em,	-em,	-e.	acr-es,	-es,	-ia.
V.	ācer, *or* acr-is,	-is,	-e.	acr-es,	-es,	-ia.
A.	acr-i,	-i,	-i.	acr-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.

In like manner decline *celĕber* or *celĕbris*, famous; *volŭcer*, or *volŭcris*, swift.

135. How do you know when an adjective ends in *e* or *i*, or *i* only, in the ablative?

Adjectives of one termination have *e* or *i* in the ablative. When the neuter ends in *e*, the ablative has *i* only. Participles have *e* oftener than *i*, and when used in the ablative absolute, only *e*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

136. What is a numeral adjective?

A NUMERAL ADJECTIVE is one that expresses *number*.

137. Into how many principal classes may numeral adjectives be divided?

Numeral adjectives may be divided into four principal classes; namely,

First—CARDINAL, which express number simply, or how many; as, *ūnus, duo, tres*, etc., one, two, three, etc.

Second—ORDINAL, denoting which one of a number; as, *prīmus, secundus, tertius*, etc., first, second, third, etc.

Third—DISTRIBUTIVES, which denote *how many of each*; as, *bīni*, two by two, *or* a pair; *terni*, three by three, *or* by threes, etc. These are used only in the plural.

Fourth—MULTIPLICATIVES, which denote *how many fold*; as, *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, triple, etc.

138. Repeat the *cardinals*, the *ordinals*, and the *distributives*, up to twenty.

	CARDINAL. *One, Two, etc.*	ORDINAL. *First, Second, etc.*	DISTRIBUTIVE. *One by One, etc.*
1.	Unus,	Prīmus,	Singŭli,
2.	Duo,	Secundus,	Bīni,
3.	Tres,	Tertius,	Terni, *or* trīni,
4.	Quatuor,	Quartus,	Quaterni,
5.	Quinque,	Quintus,	Quīni,
6.	Sex,	Sextus,	Sēni,
7.	Septem,	Septĭmus,	Septēni,
8.	Octo,	Octāvus	Octōni,
9.	Nŏvem,	Nōnus,	Novēni,
10.	Dĕcem,	Decĭmus,	Dēni,
11.	Undĕcim,	Undecĭmus,	Undēni,
12.	Duodĕcim,	Duodecĭmus,	Duodēni,
13.	Tredĕcim,	Tertius decĭmus,	Terni dēni,
14.	Quatuordĕcim,	Quartus decĭmus,	Quarterni dēni,
15.	Quindĕcim,	Quintus decĭmus,	Quīni dēni,
16.	Sedĕcim, *or* Sexdĕcim,	Sextus decĭmus,	Sēni dēni,
17.	Septemdĕcim,	Septĭmus dicĭmus,	Septēni dēni,
18.	Octodĕcim,	Octāvus decĭmus,	Octōni dēni,
19.	Novemdĕcim,	Nōnus decĭmus,	Novēni dēni,
20.	Viginti.	Vicesĭmus, *or* Vigesĭmus.	Vicēni.

139. Repeat the numbers for *thirty, forty*, etc., up to a *hundred.*

30.	Triginta,	Tricesĭmus, *or* Trigesĭmus,	Tricēni,
40.	Quadraginta,	Quadragesĭmus,	Quadragēni,
50.	Quinquaginta,	Quinquagesĭmus,	Quinquagēni,
60.	Sexaginta,	Sexagesĭmus,	Sexagēni,
70.	Septuaginta,	Septuagesĭmus,	Septuagēni,
80.	Octoginta,	Octogesĭmus,	Octogēni,
90.	Nonaginta,	Nonagesĭmus,	Nonagēni,
100.	Centum.	Centesĭmus.	Cetēni.

140. After the tens (beginning with twenty) how are the additional units expressed?

Twenty-one, *twenty-two*, etc., are expressed just as in English; thus, twenty-one, *viginti ūnus*; or one *and* twenty, *ūnus* et *viginti*, etc. After the hundreds, the conjunction is either used or omitted; as, *centum ūnus*, or *centum* et *ūnus*, a hundred *and* one.

141. What other way has the Latin of expressing eighteen, nineteen, twenty-eight, twenty-nine, etc., through the tens?

Eighteen, nineteen, etc., are sometimes expressed by *subtracting* the units from the tens; as, *duo-de-viginti*, eighteen; *un-de-quinquaginta*, forty-nine, etc. Ordinals and distributives are formed in the same manner; as, *undevicesĭmus*, the nineteenth; *duodevicēni*, etc.

142. What is the idiomatic use of *prior* and *alter*?

When only two are spoken of, *prior* is used for *prīmus* and *alter* for *secundus*.

143. Repeat the numbers for two hundred, three hundred, etc., up to a thousand.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.
200.	Ducenti,	Ducentesĭmus,	Ducēni,
300.	Trecenti,	Trecentesĭmus,	Trecēni, *or* Trecentēni,
400.	Quadringenti,	Quadringentesĭmus,	Quadringēni, *or* Quadringentēni,
500.	Quingenti,	Quingentesĭmus,	Quingēni,
600.	Sexcenti,	Sexcentesĭmus,	Sexcēni, *or* Sexcentēni,
700.	Septingenti,	Septincentesĭmus,	Septingēni,
800.	Octingenti,	Octingentesĭmus,	Octingēni,
900.	Nongenti,	Nongentesĭmus,	Nonagēni,
1000.	Mille.	Millesĭmus.	Millēni, *or* Singŭla / Millia.

144. With regard to cardinal numbers what will it be useful to remember?

It will be useful to remember that cardinal *tens* end in *ginta*, and *hundreds* in *centi* or *genti*.

145. Decline UNUS, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	
N.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum.	*The rest like* bŏnus.
G.	unīus,	unīus,	unīus.	
D.	ūni,	ūni,	ūni.	

146. Decline DUO and TRES.

DUO, *two.*

	PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	duo,	duæ,	duo.
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum.
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.
Ac.	duos, -o,	duas,	duo.
V.	duo,	duæ,	duo.
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.

TRES, *three.*

	PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	tres,	tres,	tria.
G.	trium,	trium,	trium.
D.	trĭbus,	trĭbus,	trĭbus.
Ac.	tres,	tres,	tria.
V.	tres,	tres,	tria.
Ab.	trĭbus,	trĭbus,	trĭbus.

147. Decline *quatuor*, *quinque*, etc.

The cardinal numbers from *quatuor*, four, to *centum*, a hundred, both included, are indeclinable.

148. How are the numbers from *centum* to *mille* declined?

The hundreds after centum are declined like the plural of bŏnus: *decent-i*, *-æ*, *-a*; *-ōrum*, *-ārum*, *-ōrum*, etc.

149. How is *mille* declined?

Mille in the singular is *indeclinable.* In the plural it is declined like the plural of *sedīle* (98): *millia*, *millium*, *millĭbus*, etc.

150. When is *mille* used as a noun, and when as an adjective?

Mille before a genitive plural is a noun; as, *mille homĭnum*, a thousand (of) men; before a noun, in any other case, it is a plural adjective; as, *mille homĭnes*, a thousand men.

151. How are ordinals declined?

Ordinals are declined like bŏnus; as, *prīm-us*, *-a*, *-um*, etc.

152. How are distributives declined?

Distributives are declined like the plural of bŏnus; as, *bīni*, *-æ*, *-a*; *binōrum*, *-ārum*, *-ōrum*, etc.

153. To the foregoing, what other classes of adjectives expressing numbers may be added?

TEMPORALS, which express *time;* as, *bīmus*, two years old; *trīmus*, three years old, etc.; *bĭmestris* and *bĭennis*, of two years' continuance; *trĭmestris*, etc.

INTERROGATIVES; as, *quot*, how many? *quŏtus*, of what number? *quotĕni*, how many each? *quoties* (adv.), how many times?

CORRELATIVES.

154. What are correlatives?

Correlative words are such as have a reciprocal relation: that is, one implies the other; as, *father* and *child*, *husband* and *wife*. In the same way, *tālis*, such, implies *quālis*, as.

155. Mention some of the correlative adjectives.

The more common correlatives are

Tālis, *such;*	quālis, *as.*
Tantus, *so great;*	quantus, *as.*
Tŏt, *so many;*	quot, *as.*
Totĭdem, *so many;*	quot, *as.*
Tōtus, *so great;*	quŏtus, *as.*

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

156. Repeat the numeral adverbs to twelve; also for twenty, thirty, a hundred, a thousand, etc.

Sĕmel, *once.*	Tricies, *thirty times.*
Bis, *twice.*	Quadragies, *forty times.*
Ter, *thrice.*	Quinquagies, *fifty times.*
Quăter, *four times.*	Centies, *a hundred times.*
Quinquies, *five times.*	Ducenties, *two hundred times.*
Sexies, *six times.*	Trecenties, *three hundred times.*
Septies, *seven times.*	Quadringenties, *four hundred times.*
Octies, *eight times.*	Quingenties, *five hundred times.*
Novies, *nine times.*	Millies, *a thousand times.*
Decies, *ten times.*	Bis millies, *two thousand times.*
Undecies, *eleven times.*	Ter millies, *three thousand times.*
Duodecies, *twelve times.*	Decies millies, *ten thousand times.*
Vicies, *twenty times.*	Vicies millies, *twenty thousand times.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

157. What are the terminations of the comparative degree and what of the superlative degree of an adjective?

The regular *comparative* terminates in *-ior, -ior, -ius;* and the *superlative* in { *issĭmus, issĭma, issĭmum,* or *errĭmus, errĭma, errĭmum.*

158. How are the comparative and superlative formed?

An adjective is regularly compared by adding to the root *ior* for the *comparative* and *issĭmus* for the *superlative;* as, *alt-us, alt-ior, alt-issĭmus; fēlix, felic-ior, felic-issĭmus.*

Compare DURUS, *hard;* BREVIS, *short;* AUDAX, *brave.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Dūr-us,	dur-ior,	dur-issĭmus.
Brĕv-is,	brev-ior,	brev-issĭmus.
Audax,	audac-ior,	audac-issĭmus.

159. When the positive ends in *er*, how is the superlative formed?

When the positive ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rĭmus* to the positive; as, *tĕner, tenerior, tenerrĭmus.*

Compare PAUPER, *poor;* PULCHER, *fair;* and CELER, *swift.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Pauper,	pauperior,	pauperrĭmus.
Pulcher,	pulchior,	pulcherrĭmus.
Cĕler,	celerior,	celerrĭmus.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

160. Compare the following irregular adjectives:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.			
Bŏnus,	melior,	optĭmus;	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Mălus,	pejor,	pessĭmus;	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus;	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Multus,	plus,	plurĭmus;	*much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Parvus,	mĭnor,	minĭmus;	*little,*	*less,*	*least.*

161. Compare the following, which form the superlative in *lĭmus:*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Facĭlis,	facilior,	facillĭmus;	*easy, etc.*
Gracĭlis,	gracilior,	gracillĭmus;	*lean, etc.*
Humĭlis,	humilior,	humillĭmus;	*low, etc.*
Imbecĭllis,	imbecilior,	imbecillĭmus;	*weak, etc.*
Simĭlis,	similior,	simillĭmus;	*like, etc.*

162. Compare the following, which have the *comparative regular*, but the *superlative irregular:*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Cĭter,	citerior,	citĭmus;	*near, etc.*
Dexter,	dexterior,	dextĭmus;	*right, etc.*
Exter,	exterior,	extrēmus, *or* extĭmus;	*outward, etc.*
Infĕrus,	inferior,	infĭmus, *or* īmus;	*low, etc.*
Intĕrus,	interior,	intĭmus;	*inward, etc.*
Matūrus,	maturior,	maturrĭmus, *or* maturissĭmus;	*ripe, etc.*
Postĕrus,	posterior,	postrēmus, *or* postŭmus;	*behind, etc.*
Sinister,	sinisterior,	sinistĭmus;	*left, etc.*
Supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus, *or* summus;	*high, etc.*
Vĕtus,	veterior,	veterrĭmus;	*old, etc.*
Dīves,	divitior, *or* ditior,	divitissĭmus, *or* ditissĭmus;	*rich, etc.*

163. How are compounds in *dĭcus, fĭcus, lŏquus,* and *vŏlus* compared?

Compounds in *dĭcus, fĭcus, lŏquus,* and *vŏlus* are compared by *entior* and *entissĭmus:* as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Benefĭcus,	beneficentior,	benificentissĭmus,	*beneficent.*
Benevŏlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissĭmus,	*benevolent.*
Magnilŏquus,	magniloquentior,	magniloquentissĭmus,	*boasting.*
Maledĭcus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissĭmus,	*railing.*
Mirifĭcus,	mirificentior,	mirificentissĭmus,	*wonderful.*

164. Compare the following, which *want the positive:*

COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.		
Deterior,	deterrĭmus;	*worse,*	*worst.*
Ocior,	ocissĭmus;	*swifter,*	*swiftest.*
Prior,	prīmus;	*former,*	*first.*
Propior,	proxĭmus;	*nearer,*	*nearest.*
Ulterior,	ultĭmus;	*farther,*	*farthest.*

165. Compare the following, which *want the comparative:*

POSITIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.		
Inclytus,	inclytissĭmus;	*renowned,*	*most renowned.*
Invictus,	invictissĭmus;	*invincible,*	*most invincible.*
Merĭtus,	meritissĭmus;	*deserving,*	*most deserving.*
Nupĕrus,	nuperrĭmus;	*late,*	*latest.*
Par,	parissĭmus;	*equal,*	——.
Sacer,	sacerrĭmus;	*sacred,*	*most sacred.*

166. Compare the following, which *want the superlative:*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		
Adolescens,	adolescentior	*young,*	*younger.*
Diuturnus,	diuturnior;	*lasting,*	*more lasting.*
Ingens,	ingentior;	*huge,*	*huger.*
Juvĕnis,	junior;	*young,*	*younger.*
Opīmus,	opimior;	*rich,*	*richer.*
Prōnus,	pronior;	*prone,*	*more prone.*
Sătur,	saturior;	*full,*	*fuller.*
Sĕnex,	senior;	*old,*	*older.*

167. How are *youngest* and *oldest* expressed?

Youngest is expressed by *minĭmus natu*, the least by birth; *oldest* by *maxĭmus natu*, the greatest by birth.

168. What is to be remarked of *anterior*, *sequior*, *nequam*, and *frūgi?*

Anterior, former, and *sequior*, worse, are found only in the comparative. *Nēquam*, worthless (indec.), has *nequior*, *nequissĭmus*. *Frūgi*, frugal (indec.), has *frugalior*, *frugalissĭmus*.

169. In what other way is comparison sometimes expressed?

Comparison is sometimes expressed by prefixing the adverbs *măgis*, more, and *valde* or *maxĭme*, most, to the positive.

170. When is this form of comparison used?

The comparison by *măgis* and *valde* or *maxĭme* is especially used when the adjective is of *more than two syllables* and a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case; as, *idoneus*, fit; *măgis idoneus*, *valde* or *maxĭme idoneus*: *arduus*, high; *măgis arduus*, *valde* or *maxĭme arduus*.

171. What force does *quam* prefixed give to a superlative?

Quam prefixed to a superlative makes it emphatic; as, *quam doctissĭmus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrĭme*, as speedily as possible.

PRONOUNS.

172. What is a pronoun?

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun.

173. How many pronouns are there in Latin?

In Latin there are eighteen simple pronouns; namely, *ĕgo*, *tu*, *sui*, substantive; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*, adjective.

Decline EGO, TU, and SUI.

EGO, *I*, First Person, *Masc.* or *Fem.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ĕgo,	*I;*	Nom. nos,	*we;*
Gen.	mei,	*of me;*	Gen. nostrûm, *or* nostri,	*of us;*
Dat.	mĭhi,	*to* or *for me;*	Dat. nōbis,	*to* or *for us;*
Acc.	me,	*me;*	Acc. nos,	*us;*
Voc.	——		Voc. ——	
Abl.	me,	*in, with, by me.*	Abl. nōbis,	*in, with, by us.*

TU, *thou*, Second Person, *Masc.* or *Fem.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	tu, *thou* or *you;*	N.	vos, *ye* or *you;*
G.	tui, *of thee* or *of you;*	G.	vēstrum *or* vestri, *of you;*
D.	tĭbi, *to* or *for thee* or *you;*	D.	vŏbis, *to* or *for you;*
Ac.	te, *thee* or *you;*	Ac.	vos, *you;*
V.	tu, *O thou* or *you;*	V.	vos, *O ye* or *you;*
Ab.	te, *in, with, by thee* or *you.*	Ab.	vŏbis, *in, with, by you.*

SUI, *of himself, herself, itself*, Third Person, *Masc.*, *Fem.* or *Neut.*, Reflexive.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	——	N.	——
G.	sui, *of himself, herself, etc.;*	G.	sui, *of themselves;*
D.	sĭbi, *to* or *for himself, etc.;*	D.	sĭbi, *to* or *for themselves;*
Ac.	se, *himself, etc.;*	Ac.	se, *themselves;*
V.	——	V.	——
Ab.	se, *in, with, by himself, etc.*	Ab.	se, *in, with, by themselves.*

174. Why is *sui* called a reflexive pronoun?

Sui and its derived adjective pronoun, *suus*, are called reflexive because they refer to the principal subject of a sentence, which is generally the nominative to the leading verb.

175. How are the pronouns *ego*, *tu*, and *sui* rendered emphatic?

Ego is made emphatic by the addition of the particle *met;* as, *egŏmet*, *mēmet: tu*, by the addition of *te* or *tēmet;* as, *tute*, *tutĕmet:* and *se*, by reduplication; as, *sēse.*

176. How is the preposition *cum* used with these pronouns?

In the ablative, with *cum*, *cum* is generally *suffixed* to the pronouns; as, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum.*

177. What is the difference in the use of the genitives plural, *nostrûm*, *nostri*, and *vestrûm*, *vestri?*

Nostrûm and *vestrûm* are used after partitives and interrogatives; as, *nemo vestrûm*, *quis vestrûm?* They are also the

proper forms to be joined with *omnium;* as, *omnium nostrûm parens.*

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessives.

178. What are possessive pronouns, and which are they?

Possessive pronouns denote possession. They are

Meus,	mea,	meum;	*my*, or *mine* (*from* me).
Tuus,	tua,	tuum;	*thy*, or *thine* (*from* tu).
Suus,	sua,	suum;	*his*, *her*, *its own* (*from* sui).
Noster,	nostra,	nostrum;	*our*, or *ours* (*from* nos).
Vester,	vestra,	vestrum;	*your*, or *yours* (*from* vos).

179. How are these declined?

Meus, *tuus*, and *suus* are declined like *bŏnus* (128); *noster* and *vester* like *āter* (129).

Demonstratives.

180. What are demonstrative pronouns, and which are they?

Demonstrative pronouns are such as point out precisely a person or thing already known. They are *hic*, this; *ille*, *iste*, *is*, that.

Decline Hic, *this;* Ille, Iste, and Is, *that.*

Hic, Hæc, Hoc, *this.* Plural, *these.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	masculine.	feminine.	neuter.	masculine.	feminine.	neuter.
N.	hic,	hæc,	hoc.	hi,	hæ,	hæc.
G.	hujus,	hujus,	hujus.	hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum.
D.	huic,	huic,	huic.	his,	his,	his.
Ac.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	hos,	has,	hæc.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	hoc,	hac,	hoc.	his,	his,	his.

ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *that.* Plural, *those.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	ille,	illa,	illud.	illi,	illæ,	illa.
G.	illīus,	illīus,	illīus.	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum.
D.	illi,	illi,	illi.	illis,	illis,	illis.
Ac.	illum,	illam,	illud.	illos,	illas,	illa.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	illo,	illa,	illo.	illis,	illis,	illis.

ISTE is declined like ILLE.

Nom. iste, ista, istud. Gen. istius. Dat. isti, *etc.*

IS, EA, ID, *that.* Plural, *those.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	is,	ea,	id.	ii,	eæ,	ea.
G.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus.	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D.	ei,	ei,	ei.	eis, *or* iis,	eis, *or* iis,	eis, *or* iis.
Ac.	eum,	eam,	id.	eos,	eas,	ea.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	eo,	ea,	eo.	eis, *or* iis,	eis, *or* iis,	eis, *or* iis.

181. What is the distinction between *hic*, *iste*, and *ille* as to personal application?

Hic refers to the person or thing nearest the speaker, and is called the demonstrative pronoun of the *first person.*

Iste refers to the person spoken to, or to something pertaining to him, and is called the demonstrative pronoun of the *second person.*

Ille refers to the person or thing spoken of, and is called the demonstrative pronoun of the *third person.*

182. When *hic* and *ille* are used, what is the distinction?

Hic refers to the person or thing nearest the speaker, or to what has just been spoken of; *ille* to the person or thing farthest from the speaker, or to what was formerly spoken of. This, however, is sometimes reversed.

183. What other peculiar use has *ille?*

Ille is used to indicate *celebrity,* and is then to be translated by "the"; as, *Alexander ille magnus,* Alexander the Great; *Medēa illa,* the celebrated Medea.

184. Of what is *īdem,* the same, compounded, and how is it declined?

Idem, the same, is compounded of *is* and the syllable *dem; m* is changed into *n* before *dem* for euphony or easiness of pronunciation. It is thus declined:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	īdem,	eădem,	ĭdem.	iidem,	eædem,	eădem.
G.	ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem.	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem.
D.	eidem,	eidem,	eidem.	eisdem, *or* iisdem, *etc.*		
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	ĭdem.	eosdem,	easdem,	eădem.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.	eisdem, *or* iisdem, *etc.*		

185. What should be noticed with regard to *īdem?*

In *īdem, i* in the singular masculine is *long,* in the neuter it is short.

Decline IPSE, *self,* or *he, she, it* (emphatic).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum.	ipsi,	ipsæ,	ipsa.
G.	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus.	ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum.
D.	ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi.	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.
Ac.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum.	ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsa.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	ipso,	ipsa,	ipso.	ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. What is a relative pronoun?

A RELATIVE PRONOUN is one that refers to some person or thing mentioned before, which is called its *antecedent.*

Decline the relative pronoun QUI.

QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, *who, which,* or *that.* Relative.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod.	qui,	quæ,	qūæ.
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D.	cui,	cui,	cui.	queis, *or* quĭbus, *etc.*		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quod.	quos,	quas,	quæ.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō.	queis, *or* quĭbus, *etc.*		

187. What is to be remarked of *quîs* and *quî* with the circumflex accent?

Quîs with the circumflex accent is sometimes used for *queis* or *quĭbus*, and *quî* with the same accent for the ablative singular *in all genders*, and sometimes, though rarely, for the ablative plural.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. What is an interrogative pronoun?

An INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN is one that is used to ask questions.

Decline the interrogative QUIS.

QUIS, QUÆ, QUID, *or* QUOD, *who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	quis, *or* qui,	quæ,	quid, *or* quod.	qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus.	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum.
D.	cui,	cui,	cui.	queis, *or* quĭbus, *etc*		
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quid, *or* quod.	quos,	quas,	quæ.
V.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	quō,	quā,	quō.	queis, *or* quĭbus, *etc.*		

189. What is the difference between *quis* and *qui*, and *quid* and *quod*, as interrogatives?

Quis and *quid*, as interrogatives, are used as substantives; *qui* and *quod* as adjectives. *Quis* and *quid*, however, are sometimes used adjectively.

190. Mention some other interrogative pronouns.

Quisnam? *who? what?*	Numquis? *is any one?*
Quinam? *which? what?*	Cujus? *whose?*
Ecquis? *or* ecquisnam? *is any one?*	Cujas? *of what country?*

191. How are these declined?

Those compounded of *quis* or *qui* are declined like the simple words of which they are compounded, the prefix or suffix remaining unchanged. *Cujus*, which is defective, is declined like *bŏnus*, and *cujas* like an adjective of one termination: Gen. *cujātis*; Dat. *cujāti*, etc.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

192. What are indefinite pronouns?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are such as point out persons or things indefinitely: that is, they indicate *no particular* person or thing.

193. Mention some of the indefinite pronouns.

The following are some of the indefinite pronouns. They are all compounds of *quis* or *qui*. *Qui* is always put first; *quis* is sometimes first and sometimes last.

Alĭquis, *some one.*	Quicunque, *whoever, whosoever.*
Quisque, *each, every.*	Unusquisque, *each one.*
Quisquis, *whoever, whosoever.*	Quīdam, *a certain one.*
Quisquam, *any one.*	Quilĭbet, Quīvis, } *any one you please.*
Quispiam, *some one.*	

194. How are these declined?

All the compounds of *quis* or *qui* are declined like *quis* or *qui*, the prefix or suffix being unchanged. In *unusquisque* both

unus and *quis* must be inflected; thus, Gen. *unuscujusque;* Dat. *unicuique,* etc.

NOTE.—*Aliquis* makes *aliqua* in the feminine.

195. What euphonic change is made in *quidam?*

In *quidam, m* is changed to *n* when it comes before *dam;* as *quendam* instead of *quemdam.*

196. What is to be noted of *nequis, numquis,* and *siquis?*

Nēquis, numquis, and *sīquis* are always compound pronouns, though commonly they are written separately; as, *ne quis, num quis, si quis.*

VERBS.

197. What is a verb?

A VERB is a word that affirms *existence* or *a state of being;* as, *sum,* I am; *sĕdeo,* I sit: or an *act performed;* as, *ămo,* I love; *lĕgo,* I read: or an *action received;* as, *doceor,* I am taught; *vapŭlo,* I am beaten.

198. What is the person or thing of which the affirmation is made called, and in what case is it put?

The person or thing of which the affirmation is made is called *the subject,* and is put in the *nominative case;* as, *puer ămat,* the *boy* loves. Here *puer* is the *subject* (382).

199. What is the verb called in relation to the subject?

The verb in relation to the subject is called the *predicate;* as, *puer ămat,* the boy *loves.* Here *amat* is the *predicate* (382).

200. Is the subject of a verb always in the nominative and the verb itself personal?

In certain constructions, the subject is in the *accusative* and the verb in the *infinitive,* preceded by another verb; as, *dīcit se scribĕre,* he says *that he* is writing. Here *se* is the accusative subject of *scribĕre.*

201. Into what different classes are verbs divided?

Verbs are divided into *regular*, *irregular*, *transitive*, *intransitive*, *deponent*, *common*, *neuter passive*, *defective*, and *impersonal* verbs.

202. What is a regular verb?

A REGULAR VERB is one that is formed and inflected according to certain rules.

203. What is an irregular verb?

An IRREGULAR VERB is one that, in some of its parts, deviates in formation and inflection from a regular verb.

204. What is a transitive verb?

A TRANSITIVE VERB is one in which the action passes (*transit*) from the doer or subject to some other person or thing called the *object;* as, *puer ămat parentes*, the boy loves *his parents*. Here *parentes* is the object of *ămat*.

205. What is an intransitive verb?

An INTRANSITIVE VERB is one in which the action does not pass (*in*, or *non*, *transit*) from the doer or subject to some other person or thing; as, *ambŭlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run.

206. What is a deponent verb?

A DEPONENT VERB is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active signification;* as, *lŏquor*, I speak; *ūtor*, I use. It is so called because it (*depōnit*) lays aside the active form.

207. What are common verbs?

COMMON VERBS are those which under a passive form have an *active* or *passive signification;* as, *crimĭnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

208. What are neuter passive verbs?

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS are those which *in form* are *partly active* and *partly passive;* as, *audeo*, I dare; *gaudeo*, I rejoice. The passive forms are the perfect and the tenses derived from it.

209. What are defective verbs?

DEFECTIVE VERBS are such as want some of their parts. *Aio*, I affirm, and *inquam*, I say, are defective verbs.

210. What are impersonal verbs?

IMPERSONAL VERBS are those which are used only in the third person singular; as, *dĕcet*, it behoves; *lĭcet*, it is allowed.

211. Into what further classes may verbs be subdivided?

Verbs may be further subdivided into

1. *Frequentative verbs*, which denote *repeated* action. These end in *ĭto*, and are all of the first conjugation; as, *clamĭto* (*freq.* of *clāmo*), I cry frequently.

2. *Inceptive verbs*, which mark the *beginning* of an action. These end in *asco*, *esco*, or *isco*, and are of the third conjugasion; as, *labasco* (from *lăbo*), I begin to fall—I totter; *calesco* (from *caleo*), I grow hot; *tremisco* (from *trĕmo*), I begin to tremble.

3. *Desiderative verbs*, which signify a *desire* or *intention* to do a thing. These end in *urio*, and are of the fourth conjugation; as, *cœnaturio* (from *cœno*), I want my supper; *nupturio* (from *nūbo*, *nuptum*), I desire to marry.

4. *Diminutives*, which represent an action as *little* or *trifling*. These end in *illo*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *cantillo* (from *canto*), I hum a tune; *sorbillo* (from *sorbeo*), I sip.

5. *Intensives*, which denote *eagerness* of action. These are few in number, and end in *sso;* as, *facesso* (from *facio*), I do eagerly; *petesso* or *petisso* (from *pĕto*), I strive after.

VOICE.

212. How many voices are there in Latin?

In Latin there are *two voices:* the *active*, which represents the subject as acting, and the *passive*, which represents the subject as being acted upon; as, active voice, *ămo*, I *love;* passive voice, *ămor*, I *am loved.*

MOODS.

213. What is mood?

MOOD is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the action or state of the verb.

214. How many moods has a Latin verb?

A Latin verb has *four moods;* namely, the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative,* and *infinitive.*

215. How is the indicative mood used?

The *indicative mood* is used simply to assert a fact; as, *ămat,* he loves: or to ask a question; as, *amatne,* does he love? It is sometimes also used in a conditional clause, when the condition is admitted as a fact; as, *si văles, bĕne est,* if you are in good health, it is well.

216. How is the subjunctive mood used?

The *subjunctive mood* is used to express the state or act of a verb, *not as a fact, but as a possibility,* including *power, liberty, duty,* and *obligation.* It is used in dependent clauses (380) after certain conjunctions, or independently and without a conjunction as a softened imperative.

217. How is the imperative mood used?

The *imperative mood* is used for *commanding, exhorting,* or *entreating.*

218. How is the infinitive mood used?

The *infinitive mood* is used to express the state or act of the verb in an *unlimited* manner; that is, without any restriction as to person or number.

TENSES.

219. What is tense?

Tense means *time,* and is used to distinguish the state or action of a verb in this respect.

220. How many tenses are there?

There are *six tenses;* namely, *present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, future,* and *future perfect.*

221. Into what two classes are tenses divided?

Tenses are divided into two classes, *primary* and *secondary.*

222. How are these tenses used?

The *primary* tenses are used to express actions as *present* or *future;* the *secondary,* those which are past.

223. Which are the primary tenses, and which the secondary?

The Primary Tenses are,	*The Secondary Tenses are,*
Present,	Imperfect,
Perfect *definite*,	Perfect *indefinite*,
Futures.	Pluperfect.

224. For what is the present tense used?

The *present tense* is used to express an action that is *now* going on; as, *ămo*, I love, do love, or am loving.

225. For what is the imperfect tense used?

The *imperfect tense* is used to express an action as *past*, but *not completed;* as, *amābam*, I loved, did love, or was loving: also for *repeated* or *customary* actions in past time; as, *equitābam*, I used to ride.

226. How is the perfect definite used?

The *perfect definite* is used to represent an action as *past* and *completed*, but with reference to the present: its sign is *have;* as, *amāvi*, I *have* loved.

227. How is the perfect indefinite used?

The *perfect indefinite* is used to express an action simply as past and completed, without any reference to the present; as, *amāvi*, I loved, or I did love. This is sometimes called the *aorist* perfect.

228. Has the Latin two forms of the perfect?

There is but one form for the perfect. Whether the perfect is definite or indefinite is determined by the connection.

229. How is the pluperfect tense used?

The *pluperfect tense* is used to express an action as past and completed before some other past action: its sign is *had;* as, *amavĕram*, I *had* loved.

230. How is the future tense used?

The *future tense* is used to express an action that will take place in some *future time:* its sign is *shall* or *will;* as, *amābo*, I *shall* or *will* love.

231. How is the future perfect used?

The *future perfect* is used to express an action that will be completed *before* some other future action or event: its sign in the first person is *shall have;* in the second person *will have:* as, *amavĕro,* I *shall have* loved; *amavĕris,* thou *wilt have* loved, etc.

English of the Subjunctive Mood.

232. In the subjunctive mood, what is the sign of the present tense?

In the subjunctive mood the sign of the present tense is *may* or *can*; as, *ămem,* I *may* or *can* love. With a conjunction, it is often rendered by the present indicative; as, *si ămem,* if I love. Without a conjunction, in an independent clause (380), it is used as a softened imperative; as, *ămem,* let me love.

233. What is the sign of the imperfect tense?

The sign of the imperfect subjunctive is *might, could, would, should;* as, *amārem,* I *might, could, would,* or *should* love. With a conjunction, it often takes the indicative meaning; as, *si amārem,* if I loved.

234. What is the sign of the perfect tense?

The sign of the perfect subjunctive is *may have;* as, *amavĕrim,* I *may have* loved. With adjuncts, its meanings are so modified that they may be best learned by practice.*

235. What is the sign of the pluperfect?

The sign of the pluperfect subjunctive is *might, could, would,* or *should have;* as, *amavissem,* I *might, could, would,* or *should have* loved. This tense, like the perfect, is variously rendered.

236. What is the sign of the future subjunctive?

There is no future tense in the subjunctive mood.

---

* The attention of the pupil should be directed to the practice of the best writers in the Latin language in the use of both the perfect and pluperfect tenses.

English of the Imperative and Infinitive.

237. Give the English of the imperative.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2d Person,	Love thou, or do thou love,	Love ye, or do ye love,
3d Person,	Let him love;	Let them love.

238. Give the infinitive meanings.

Pres. To love. *Perf.* To have loved. *Fut.* To be about to love.

Infinitive with an Accusative Subject.

239. What modification of meaning does the infinitive undergo when it has an accusative subject before it?

With an accusative subject before it, the infinitive takes the meaning of a personal verb, and its time from the tense of the verb by which it is preceded. Thus,

Present *after a*

Present: *dīcit* se amāre, he *says* that he loves, does love, or is loving.
Past: *dixit* se amāre, he *said* that he loved, did love, or was loving.

Perfect *after a*

Present: *dīcit* se amavisse, he *says* that he loved, did love, or has loved.
Past: *dixit* se amavisse, he *said* that he had loved.

Future *after a*

Present: *dīcit* se amatūrum fuisse, he *says* } that he would have loved.
Past: *dixit* se amatūrum fuisse, he *said* }

PARTICIPLES.

240. How many participles has a Latin verb, and how are they Englished?

A Latin verb has *four* participles, which terminate and are Englished thus:

Active. { Present: *ns;* as, *amans,* loving.
Future in *rus;* as, *amatūrus,* { about to love, or going to love.

Passive. { Perfect: *tus;* as, *amatus,* loved, or being loved.
Future in *dus;* as, *amandus,* { to be necessary, worthy, or proper to be loved.

241. What participles are wanting in Latin?

The Latin has no *perfect participle active* nor *present passive.*

242. How is the perfect participle supplied?

The perfect participle active is supplied either (1) by the perfect passive in the case absolute, or (2) by *quŭm* with the pluperfect subjunctive; as,

(1) *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*—Cæsar, these things being said (or having said these things), departed.

(2) *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset*, etc.—Cæsar, when he had said (or having said) these things, etc.

243. How is the perfect participle passive supplied?

The perfect participle passive is often used in a present sense; as, *amatus*, loved, or *being* loved.

244. How is the perfect participle of a deponent verb Englished?

The perfect participle of a deponent verb is Englished by *having;* as, *loquūtus*, having spoken; *pollicĭtus*, having promised.

GERUNDS—GERUNDIVES—SUPINES.

245. What is a gerund?

A GERUND is a verbal noun, used only in the singular number, nominative and vocative wanting. It is Englished, like the present participle active, by *ing;* as, *amandi*, of loving, etc.

246. What is a gerundive?

The participle in *dus*, when used as a gerund, is called a *gerundive.*

247. What is a supine, how many are there, and how rendered?

A SUPINE is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular. There are *two supines*, called the *former* and *latter.* The former is Englished like the present infinitive active, and the latter like the present infinitive passive. Thus,

Former Supine, *amātum*, to love.
Latter Supine, *amātu*, to be loved.

CONJUGATION.

248. What do you mean by the conjugation of a verb?

The CONJUGATION OF A VERB is the arrangement of its moods, tenses, voices, numbers, and persons according to a certain order.

249. How many conjugations are there, and how are they distinguished?

There are FOUR CONJUGATIONS of verbs, distinguished from each other by the vowel before *re* of the infinitive:

The FIRST has *ā* before *re;* as, *amāre,* to love.
The SECOND has *ē* before *re;* as, *monēre,* to warn.
The THIRD has *ĕ* before *re;* as, *regĕre,* to rule.
The FOURTH has *ī* before *re;* as, *audīre,* to hear.

250. Give the regular terminations of the principal parts of the four conjugations.

	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PERFECT INDICATIVE.	FIRST SUPINE.
First:	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum.
Second:	-eo,	-ēre,	-ui,	-ĭtum.
Third:	-o, *or* -io,	-ĕre,	-i, *or* -si,	-tum, *or* -sum.
Fourth:	-io,	-īre,	-īvi,	-ītum.

251. What remark may be made as to the terminations of the perfects and supines of the third conjugation?

The perfects and supines of the third conjugation are so modified by the connecting letters and the changes which they undergo in combination that they can not be briefly specified. They are most readily learned by practice.

252. Conjugate a regular verb in each of the four conjugations.

1.	Am-o,	am-āre,	amāv-i,	amāt-um,	*to love.*
2.	Mon-eo,	mon-ēre,	monu-i,	monĭt-um,	*to warn.*
3.	Rĕg-o,	reg-ĕre,	rex-i,	rect-um,	*to rule.*
	Cap-io,	cap-ĕre,	cēp-i,	capt-um,	*to take.*
4.	Aud-io,	aud-īre,	audīv-i,	audīt-um,	*to hear.*

253. How many roots has a verb, and how are they obtained?

A verb has *three roots*. The *first* is obtained by cutting off *re* of the infinitive with the vowel before it; the *second*, by cutting off *i* from the perfect; and the *third*, by cutting off *um* from the supine.

254. Name the roots of *ămo*, *moneo*, *rĕgo*, *capio*, and *audio*?

	FIRST ROOT.	SECOND ROOT.	THIRD ROOT.
AMO:	am-,	amāv-,	amāt-.
MONEO:	mon-,	monu-,	monĭt-.
REGO:	reg-,	rex-,	rect-.
CAPIO:	cap-,	cēp-,	capt-.
AUDIO:	aud-,	audīv-,	audīt-.

255. Enumerate the tenses formed from the different roots, as shown in the following table:

	FIRST ROOT.	SECOND ROOT.	THIRD ROOT.
Indicative,	Present, Imperfect, Future;	Perfect, Pluperfect, Future perfect.	—— —— ——
Subjunctive,	Present, Imperfect;	Perfect, Pluperfect.	—— ——
Imperative,	Present.	——	——
Infinitive,	Present;	Perfect;	Future.
Participles,	Present, *act.*, Future, *pass.*;	—— ——	Future, *act.*, Perfect, *pass.*
	Gerunds.		Supines.

256. How are the different parts of the verb formed from these roots?

The manner in which the different parts of the verbs are formed from the roots is seen from the following

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF FORMATION OF THE TENSES (ACTIVE VOICE).

FIRST ROOT.

	INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERAT.	INFI.	PARTICIPLE.		GERUND.
	PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PRES.	IMPER.	IMPERF.	PRES.	PRES.	FUT. PER.	
1.	Am-*o*,	*-ābam*,	*-abo*,	*-em*,	*-ārem*,	*-a* or *-āto*,	*-āre*,	*-ans*,	*-andus*,	*-andi.*
2.	Mon-*eo*,	*-ēbam*,	*-ebo*,	*-eam*,	*-ērem*,	*-e* or *-ēto*,	*-ēre*,	*-ens*,	*-endus*,	*-endi.*
3.	Reg-*o*,	*-ēbam*,	*-am.*	*-am*,	*-ĕrem*,	*-e* or *-ĭto*,	*-ĕre*,	*-ens*,	*-endus*,	*-endi.*
4.	Aud-*io*,	*-iēbam*,	*-iam*,	*-iam*,	*-īrem*,	*-i* or *-īto*,	*-īre*,	*-iens*,	*-iendus*,	*-iendi.*

SECOND ROOT.

	Indicative.			Subjunctive.		Infinitive.
	perfect.	pluperf.	fu. perf.	perfect.	pluperf.	perfect.
1.	Amāv-*i*,	*-ĕram*,	*-ĕro*,	*-ĕrim*,	*-issem*,	*-isse.*
2.	Monu-*i*,	*-ĕram*,	*-ĕro*,	*-ĕrim*,	*-issem*,	*-isse.*
3.	Rex-*i*,	*-ĕram*,	*-ĕro*,	*-ĕrim*,	*-issem*,	*-isse.*
4.	Audīv-*i*,	*-ĕram*,	*-ĕro*,	*-ĕrim*,	*-issem*,	*-isse.*

THIRD ROOT.

	Future Infinitive.			
1.	Amat-		Future Participle.	Supine.
2.	Monit-	*-ūrus esse* or *fuisse*,	*-ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum,*	*-um.*
3.	Rect-			
4.	Audit-			

257. Do verbs in *io*, of the third conjugation, terminate in every respect like *rĕgo?*

Verbs in *io*, of the third conjugation, are irregular in their formation from the first root. They terminate like verbs of the fourth conjugation in the *imperfect* and *future indicative, present subjunctive, present participle active, future participle passive*, and *gerund.*

258. How are the tenses of the passive voice formed?

The tenses of the passive voice are formed directly from those of the active by *adding r* to any tense ending in *o*, or *changing* the final *m* of any tense into *r* for the passive, except in the compound tenses, as may be seen in the following

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF FORMATION OF THE TENSES (PASSIVE VOICE).

FIRST ROOT.

	Indicative.			Subjunctive.		Imperative.	Infin.	Partici.
	present.	imperf.	future.	pres.	imperf.	present.	pres.	future.
1.	Am-*or*,	*-ābar*,	*-ābor*,	*-er*,	*-ārer*,	*-āre* or *-ātor*,	*-āri*,	*-andus.*
2.	Mon-*eor*,	*-ēbar*,	*-ēbor*,	*-ear*,	*-ērer*,	*-ēre* or *-ētor*,	*-ēri*,	*-endus.*
3.	Rĕg-*or*,	*-ēbar*,	*-ar*,	*-ar*,	*-ĕrer*,	*-ĕre* or *-ĭtor*,	*-i*,	*-endus.*
4.	Aud-*ior*,	*-iēbar*,	*-iar*,	*-iar*,	*-īrer*,	*-īre* or *-ītor*,	*-īri*,	*-iendus.*

259. What tenses in the passive are compound?

The compound tenses in the passive are all the *perfects* and *pluperfects*, the *future perfect*, and the *future infinitive.*

260. How are the compound tenses formed?

The *compound tenses* are formed of the perfect participle passive and some part of the verb *sum*. The *future infinitive*, however, is formed of the first supine and *iri*.

261. Repeat the compound tenses as exhibited in the following

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE COMPOUND TENSES (PASSIVE VOICE).

THIRD ROOT.

	INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		INFINITIVE.
	PERFECT.	PLUPERF.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PERFECT.
1. Amātus	*sum*,	ĕram,	ĕro,	sim,	essem,	esse,
2. Monĭtus	or	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*
3. Rectus	*fui*,	fuĕram,	fuĕro;	fuĕrim,	fuissem;	fuisse.
4. Audītus						

FUTURE INFINITIVE.

Amātum, Monĭtum, Rectum, Audītum } iri.

262. Is there any compound tense in the active voice?

There is one compound tense in the active voice, namely, the future infinitive, which is formed of the future participle in *rus*, with *esse* or *fuisse*. Thus,

Amatūrus, Monitūrus, Rectūrus, Auditūrus } esse, *or* fuisse.

263. In the formation of verbs, what will it be useful to remember?

It will be useful to remember (1) That in the *first* and *second* conjugations the *future indicative ends in bo* (*ābo*, *ēbo*), the *third* in *am* (*iam*), and the *fourth* in *īam*. (2) That the *imperfect subjunctive* of any verb is formed by *adding m* (pass. *r*) to the infinitive. (3) That the *imperative active* is formed by *cutting off re* from the infinitive. (4) That the *imperative passive* is the *same in form* as the infinitive active. (5) That the *present infinitive passive* of the *third* conjugation is formed by *changing or* or *ior* of the present into *i*.

264. What are the personal terminations?

The *personal* terminations, except of the perfect, are

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	m (o),	mus.	r,	mur.
2.	s,	tis.	ris, *or* re,	mĭni.
3.	t,	nt.	tur,	ntur.

265. In regard to personal terminations, what will it be useful to remember?

In the personal terminations it will be useful to remember (1) that if a person ends in *s* (except *mus*) it is a *second* person; (2) that the *third* person singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*, and that these are made passive by the addition of *ur*; as, *amat*, *amant*, *amatur*, *amantur*.

266. What are the personal terminations of the perfect indicative active?

The personal terminations of the perfect indicative active are

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	i,	ĭmus.
2.	isti,	istis.
3.	it,	ērunt, *or* ēre.

267. What are the terminations of the imperative?

The terminations of the imperative are

	Active Voice.			
	FIRST CONJUGATION.	SECOND CONJUG.	THIRD CONJUG.	FOURTH CONJ.
Singular. 2.	ā, *or* āto,	ē, *or* ēto,	ĕ, *or* ĭto,	i, *or* īto,
Singular. 3.	āto;	ēto;	ĭto;	īto.
Plural. 2.	āte, *or* ātote,	ēte, *or* etōte,	ĭte, or itōte,	īte, *or* itōte,
Plural. 3.	anto;	ento;	ento;	iunto.

	Passive Voice.			
	FIRST CONJUGATION.	SECOND CONJUG.	THIRD CONJUG.	FOURTH CONJ.
Singular. 2.	āre, *or* ātor,	ēre, *or* ētor,	ĕre, *or* ĭtor,	īre, *or* ītor,
Singular. 3.	ātor;	ētor;	ĭtor;	ītor.
Plural. 2.	amĭni,	emĭni,	imĭni,	imĭni,
Plural. 3.	antor;	entor;	untor;	iuntor.

The Irregular Verb "Sum."

268. What is the irregular verb *sum* sometimes called?

The *irregular verb sum* is sometimes called a *substantive verb*, because it denotes *being* or simple *existence;* and sometimes an *auxiliary* or *helping* verb, because it is used as an *auxiliary* or *help* in inflecting some of the tenses of the passive voice.

269. Conjugate the verb Sum, *to be.*

PRESENT INDIC.	PRESENT INFIN.	PERFECT INDIC.	FUTURE PARTICIPLE.
sum;	esse;	fui;	futurus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum, *I am;*	sŭmus, *we are;*
2. ĕs, *thou art*, or *you are;*	estis, *ye* or *you are;*
3. est, *he, she*, or *it is*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. ĕram, *I was;*	erāmus, *we were;*
2. ĕras, *thou wast;*	erātis, *ye* or *you were;*
3. ĕrat, *he was.*	ĕrant, *they were.*

FUTURE TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. ĕro, *I shall* or *will be;*	erĭmus, *we shall* or *will be;*
2. ĕris, *thou shalt* or *wilt be;*	erĭtus, *ye* or *you shall* or *will be;*
3. ĕrit, *he shall* or *will be.*	ĕrunt, *they shall* or *will be.*

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fui, *I was*, or *have been;*	fuĭmus, *we were*, or *have been;*
2. fuisti, *thou wast*, or *hast been;*	fuistis, *ye* or *you were*, or *have been;*
3. fuit, *he was*, or *has been.*	fuērunt, *or* fuēre, *they were*, etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuĕram, *I had been;*	fuerāmus, *we had been;*
2. fuĕras, *thou hast been;*	fuerātis, *ye* or *you had been;*
3. fuĕrat, *he had been.*	fuĕrant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuĕro, *I shall have been;*	fuerĭmus, *we shall have been;*
2. fuĕris, *thou wilt have been;*	fuerĭtis, *ye* or *you will have been;*
3. fuĕrit, *he will have been.*	fuĕrint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sim, *I may* or *can be;*	sīmus, *we may* or *can be;*
2. sis, *thou mayst* or *canst be;*	sītis, *ye* or *you may* or *can be;*
3. sit, *he may* or *can be.*	sint, *they may* or *can be.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. essem, *I might, could,* etc., *be;*	essēmus, *we might, could,* etc., *be;*
2. esses, { *thou mightst, couldst,* etc., *be;*	essētis, { *ye* or *you might, could,* etc., *be;*
3. esset, *he might, could,* etc., *be.*	essent, *they might, could,* etc., *be.*

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuĕrim, *I may have been;*	fuerĭmus, *we may have been;*
2. fuĕris, *thou mayst have been;*	fuerĭtus, { *ye* or *you may have been;*
3. fuĕrit, *he may have been.*	fuĕrint, *they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. fuissem, { *I might, could,* etc., *have been;*	fuissēmus, { *we might, could,* etc., *have been;*
2. fuisses, { *thou mightst, couldst,* etc., *have been;*	fuissētis, { *ye* or *you might, could,* etc., *have been;*
3. fuisset, { *he might, could,* etc., *have been.*	fuissent, { *they might, could,* etc., *have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. ĕs, *or* esto, *be thou,* or *do thou be;*	este, *or* estōte, *be ye,* or *do ye be;*
3. esto, *let him be.*	sunto, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, . . . esse, *to be.*
Perfect, . . . fuisse, *to have been.*
Future, . . . futūrus esse, *to be about to be.*
Future Perfect, futūrus fuisse, *to have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLES.

Future, futūrus, -ura, -urum, *about to be.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF *SUM*.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Present,	sum,	sim,	ĕs, *or* esto.	esse,	——
Imperfect,	ĕram,	essem,	——	——	——
Future,	ĕro,	——	——	futūrus esse,	futūrus.
Perfect,	fui,	fuĕrim,	——	fuisse,	——
Pluperfect,	fuĕram,	fuissem.	——	——	——
Fut. Perf.,	fuĕro.	——	——	futūrus fuisse.	——

Conjugation of the Regular Verbs.

270. Proceed now to conjugate the regular verbs Amo, Moneo, Rego, Capio, and Audio.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.			Passive Voice.		
Pres. Indic.,	ămo,	*to love.*	*Pres. Indic.*,	ămor,	*to be loved.*
Pres. Infin.,	amāre,		*Pres. Infin.*,	amāri,	
Perf. Indic.,	amāvi,		*Perf. Part.*,	amātus,	
Supine,	amātum,				

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I love, do love, or *am loving.*	*I am loved.*
1. ăm-o, *I love;*	ăm-or, *I am loved;*
2. ăm-as, *thou lovest;*	am-āris, *or* re, *thou art loved;*
3. ăm-at, *he loves.*	am-ātur, *he is loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. am-āmus, *we love;*	am-āmur, *we are loved;*
2. am-ātis, *you love;*	am-amĭni, *you are loved;*
3. am-ant, *they love.*	am-antur, *they are loved.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I loved, did love, or *was loving.*	*I was loved.*
1. am-ābam, *I loved;*	am-ābar, *I was loved;*
2. am-ābas, *thou lovedst;*	am-abāris, *or* re, *thou wast loved;*
3. am-ābat, *he loved.*	am-abātur, *he was loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. am-abāmus, *we loved;*	am-abāmur, *we were loved;*
2. am-abātis, *you loved;*	am-abamĭni, *you were loved;*
3. am-ābant, *they loved.*	am-abantur, *they were loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I shall or *will love.*	*I shall* or *will be loved.*
1. am-ābo, *I shall love;*	am-ābor, *I shall be loved;*
2. am-ābis, *thou wilt love;*	am-abĕris, *or* re, *thou wilt be loved;*
3. am-ābit, *he will love.*	am-abĭtur, *he will be loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. am-abĭmus, *we shall love;*	am-abĭmur, *we shall be loved;*
2. am-abĭtis, *you will love;*	am-abimĭni, *you will be loved;*
3. am-ābunt, *they will love.*	am-abuntur, *they will be loved.*

PERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I loved, did love, or *have loved.*	*I was* or *have been loved.*
1. amāv-i, *I loved;*	amātus sum, *or* fui, *I was loved;*
2. amav-isti, *thou lovedst;*	amātus ĕs, *or* fuisti, *thou wast loved;*
3. amav-it, *he loved.*	amātus est, *or* fuit, *he was loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. amavĭmus, *we loved;*	amāti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus, *we were loved;*
2. amav-istis, *you loved;*	amāti estis, *or* fuistis, *you were loved;*
3. amav-ērunt, *or* -ēre, *they loved.*	amāti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre, *they were loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I had loved.	*I had been loved.*
1. amav-ĕram, *I had loved;*	amātus ĕram, *or* fuĕram, *I had been loved;*
2. amav-ĕras, *thou hadst loved;*	amātus ĕras, *or* fuĕras, *thou hadst been loved;*
3. amav-ĕrat, *he had loved.*	amātus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat, *he had been loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. amav-erāmus, *we had loved;*	amāti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus, *we had been loved;*
2. amav-erātis, *you had loved;*	amāti erātis, *or* fuerātis, *you had been loved;*
3. amav-ĕrant, *they had loved.*	amāti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant, *they had been loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I shall or *will have loved.*	*I shall* or *will have been loved.*
1. amav-ĕro, *I shall have loved;*	amātus ĕro, *or* fuĕro, *I shall have been loved;*
2. amav-ĕris, *thou wilt have loved;*	amātus ĕris, *or* fuĕris, *thou wilt have been loved;*
3. amav-ĕrit, *he will have loved.*	amātus ĕrit, *or* fuĕrit, *he will have been loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. amav-erĭmus, *we shall have loved;*	amāti erĭmus, *or* fuerĭmus, *we shall have been loved;*
2. amav-erĭtis, *you will have loved;*	amāti erĭtis, *or* fuerĭtis, *you will have been loved;*
3. amav-ĕrint, *they will have loved.*	amāti ĕrint, *or* fuĕrint, *they will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I may or *can love.*	*I may* or *can be loved.*
1. ăm-em, *I may* or *can love;*	ăm-er, *I may be loved;*
2. ăm-es, *thou mayst love;*	am-ēris, *or* re, *thou mayst be loved;*
3. ăm-et, *he may love.*	am-ētur, *he may be loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. am-ēmus, *we may love;*	am-ēmur, *we may be loved;*
2. am-ētis, *you may love;*	am-emĭni, *you may be loved;*
3. ăm-ent, *they may love.*	am-entur, *they may be loved.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I might, could, would, or *should love.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be loved.*
1. am-ārem, *I might love;*	am-ārer, *I might be loved;*
2. am-āres, *thou mightst love;*	am-arēris, *or* re, *thou mightst be loved;*
3. am-āret, *he might love.*	am-arētur, *he might be loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. am-arēmus, *we might love,*	am-arēmur, *we might be loved;*
2. am-arētis, *you might love;*	am-aremĭni, *you might be loved;*
3. am-ārent, *they might love.*	am-arentur, *they might be loved.*

PERFECT TENSE.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I may have loved.	*I may have been loved.*
1. amav-ĕrĭm, *I may have loved;*	amātus sim, *or* fuĕrim, *I may have been loved;*
2. amav-ĕrĭs, *thou mayst have loved;*	amātus sis, *or* fuĕris, *thou mayst have been loved;*
3. amav-ĕrĭt, *he may have loved.*	amātus sit, *or* fuĕrit, *he may have been loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. amav-erĭmus, *we may have loved;*	amāti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus, *we may have been loved;*
2. amav-erĭtis, *you may have loved;*	amāti sītis, *or* fuerĭtis, *you may have been loved;*
3. amav-ĕrint, *they may have loved.*	amāti sint, *or* fuĕrint, *they may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
I might, could, would, or *should have loved.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been loved.*
1. amav-issem, *I might have loved;*	amātus essem, *or* fuissem, *I might have been loved;*
2. amav-isses, *thou mightst have loved;*	amātus esses, or fuisses, *thou mightst have been loved;*
3. amav-isset, *he might have loved.*	amātus esset, or fuisset, *he might have been loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. amav-issēmus, *we might have loved;*	amāti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus, *we might have been loved;*
2. amav-issētis, *you might have loved;*	amāti essētis, *or* fuissētis, *you might have been loved;*
3. amav-issent, *they might have loved.*	amāti essent, *or* fuissent, *they might have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Love thou, or *do thou love.*	*Be thou loved,* or *do thou be loved.*
2. ăm-a, *or* -āto, *love thou;*	am-āre, *or* -ātor, *be thou loved;*
3. am-āto, *let him love.*	am-ātor. *let him be loved.*
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
2. am-āte, *or* -atōte, *love ye;*	am-amĭni, *be ye loved;*
3. am-anto, *let them love.*	am-antor, *let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
To love.	*To be loved.*
Present, am-āre, *to love;*	*Pres.*, am-āri, *to be loved;*
Perfect, amav-isse, *to have loved;*	*Perf.*, amāt-us esse, *or* fuisse, *to have been loved;*
Future, amat-ūrus esse, *to be about to love;*	*Fut.*, amāt-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*
F. Perf., amat-ūrus fuisse, *to have been about to love.*	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres., ăm-ans, *loving;*	*Perf.*, amāt-us, *loved*, or *being loved;*
Fut., amat-ūrus, *about to love*, or *going to love.*	*Fut.*, am-andus, *to be loved, worthy* or *proper to be loved.*

SUPINES.

Former, amāt-um, *to love.* *Latter*, amāt-u, *to be loved.*

GERUND.

Genitive,	am-andi,	*of loving;*
Dative,	am-ando,	*to* or *for loving;*
Accusative,	am-andum,	*loving;*
Ablative,	am-ando,	*in, with, by loving.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF *AMO*.

	First Root, *Am.*		Second Root, *Amav.*	Third Root, *Amat.*
	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Ind. Pres.,	ămo,	ămor.	*Ind. Perfect*, amāvi,	amātus sum, *etc.*
Ind. Imp.	amābam,	amābar.	*Ind. Pluperf.*, amavĕram,	amātus ĕram, *etc.*
Ind. Fut.	amābo,	amābor	*Ind. F. Perf.*, amavĕro,	amātus ĕro, *etc.*
Subj. Pres.,	ămem,	ămer.	*Subj. Perfect*, amavĕrim,	amātus sim, *etc.*
Subj. Imp.,	amārem,	amārer.	*Subj. Pluper.*, amavissem,	amātus essem, *etc.*
Imperative,	ăma,	amāre.	*Inf. Perfect*, amavisse,	amātus esse, *etc.*
Inf. Pres.,	amāre,	amāri.		
Part. Pres.,	ămans.	——		
Part. Fut.,	——	amandus.		
Gerund,	amandi.	——		

	Third Root.	
Inf. Future,	amatūrus esse,	amātum iri.
Part. Future,	amatūrus.	——
Part. Perfect,	——	amātus.
Supine,	*Former*, amātum.	*Latter*, amātu.

217. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.			PASSIVE VOICE.		
Pres. Ind.,	mon-eo,	*to warn (advise).*	*Pres. Ind.*,	moneor,	*to be warned (advised).*
Pres. Inf.	mon-ēre,		*Pres. Inf.*,	mon-ēri,	
Perf. Ind.,	monu-i,		*Perf. Par.*,	monĭtus,	
Supine,	monĭt-um,				

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I warn, do warn,* or *am warning.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I am warned.*
Singular.	1. mon-eo,	mon-eor,
	2. mŏn-es,	mon-ēris, *or* -ēre,
	3. mŏn-et;	mon-ētur;
Plural.	1. mon-ēmus,	mon-ēmur,
	2. mon-ētis,	mon-emĭni,
	3. mŏn-ent.	mon-entur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	I warn, did warn, or *was warning.*	*I was warned.*
Singular.	1. mon-ēbam,	mon-ēbar,
	2. mon-ēbas,	mon-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,
	3. mon-ēbat;	mon-ebātur;
Plural.	1. mon-ebāmus,	mon-ebāmur,
	2. mon-ebātis,	mon-ebamĭni,
	3. mon-ēbant.	mon-ebantur.

FUTURE TENSE.

	I shall or *will warn.*	*I shall* or *will be warned.*
Singular.	1. mon-ēbo,	mon-ēbor,
	2. mon-ēbis,	mon-ebĕris, *or* -ebĕre,
	3. mon-ēbit;	mon-ebĭtur;
Plural.	1. mon-ebĭmus,	mon-ebĭmur,
	2. mon-ebĭtis,	mon-ebimĭni,
	3. mon-ēbunt.	mon-ebuntur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	I warn, did warn, or *have warned.*	*I was* or *have been warned.*
Singular.	1. monu-i,	monĭtus sum, *or* fui,
	2. monu-isti,	monĭtus ĕs, *or* fuisti,
	3. monu-it;	monĭtus est, or fuit;
Plural.	1. monu-ĭmus,	monĭti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus,
	2. monu-istis,	monĭti estis, *or* fuistis,
	3. monu-ērunt, *or* -ēre.	monĭti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I had warned.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I had been warned.*
Singular.	1. monu-ĕram,	monĭtus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,
	2. monu-ĕras,	monĭtus ĕras, *or* fuĕras,
	3. monu-ĕrat;	monĭtus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat;
Plural.	1. monu-erāmus.	monĭti erāmus, *or* fuĕramus,
	2. monu-erātis,	monĭti erātis, *or* fuerātis,
	3. monu-ĕrant.	monĭti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

	I shall have warned.	*I shall have been warned.*
Singular.	1. monu-ĕro,	monĭtus ĕro, *or* fuĕro,
	2. monu-ĕris,	monĭtus ĕris, *or* fuĕris,
	3. monu-ĕrit;	monĭtus ĕrit, *or* fuĕrit;
Plural.	1. monu-erĭmus,	monĭti erĭmus, *or* fuerĭmus,
	2. monu-erĭtis,	monĭti erĭtis, *or* fuerĭtis,
	3. monu-ĕrint.	monĭti ĕrint, *or* fuĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	I may or *can warn.*	*I may* or *can be warned.*
Singular.	1. mon-eam,	mon-ear,
	2. mon-eas,	mon-eāris, *or* -eāre,
	3. mon-eat;	mon-eātur;
Plural.	1. mon-eāmus,	mon-eāmur,
	2. mon-eātis,	mon-eamĭni,
	3. mon-eant.	mon-eantur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	I might, could, would, or *should warn.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be warned.*
Singular.	1. mon-ērem,	mon-ērer,
	2. mon-ēres,	mon-erēris, *or* -erēre,
	3. mon-ēret;	mon-erētur;
Plural.	1. mon-erēmus,	mon-erēmur,
	2. mon-erētis,	mon-eremĭni,
	3. mon-ērent.	mon-erentur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	I may have warned.	*I may have been warned.*
Singular.	1. monu-ĕrim,	monĭtus sim, *or* fuĕrim,
	2. monu-ĕris,	monĭtus sis, *or* fuĕris,
	3. monu-ĕrit;	monĭtus sit, *or* fuĕrit;
Plural.	1. monu-erĭmus,	monĭti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,
	2. monu-erĭtis,	monĭti sītis, *or* fuerĭtis,
	3. monu-ĕrint.	monĭti sint, *or* fuĕrint.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I might, could, would,* or *should have warned.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I might, could, would,* or *should have been warned.*
Singular.	1. monu-issem, 2. monu-isses, 3. monu-isset;	monĭtus essem, *or* fuissem, monĭtus esses, *or* fuisses, monĭtus esset, *or* fuisset;
Plural.	1. monu-issēmus, 2. monu-issētis, 3. monu-issent;	monĭti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus, monĭti essētis, *or* fuissētis, monĭti essent, *or* fuissent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Warn thou, or *do thou warn.*	*Be thou warned,* or *do thou be warned.*
Singular.	2. mon-ē, *or* -ēto, 3. mon-ēto;	mon-ēre, *or* -ētor, mon-ētor;
Plural.	2. mon-ēte, *or* -etōte, 3. mon-ento.	mon-emĭni, mon-entor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To warn.	*To be warned.*
Present, mon-ēre, *to warn;*	*Present,* mon-ēri, *to be warned;*
Perfect, monu-isse, *to have warned;*	*Perfect,* monĭt-us esse, *or* fuisse, *to have been warned;*
Future, monit-ūrus esse, *to be about to warn;*	*Future,* monĭt-um iri, *to be about to be warned.*
F. Perf., monit-ūrus fuisse, *to have been about to warn.*	

PARTICIPLES.

Present, mŏn-ens, *warning;*	*Perfect,* monĭt-us, *warned,* or *being warned;*
Future, monit-ūrus, *about to warn,* or *going to warn.*	*Future,* mon-endus, *to be warned, worthy* or *proper to be warned.*

SUPINES.

Former, monĭt-um, *to warn.* *Latter,* monĭt-u, *to be warned.*

GERUND.

Genitive,	mon-endi,	*of warning;*
Dative,	mon-endo,	*to* or *for warning;*
Accusative,	mon-endum,	*warning;*
Ablative,	mon-endo,	*in, with, by warning.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF *MONEO*.

	First Root, *Mon.*		Second Root, *Monu.*	Third Root, *Monit.*
	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Ind. Pres.,	mŏneo,	moneor.	*Ind. Perfect*, monuī,	monītus sum, *etc.*
Ind. Imp.,	monēbam,	monēbar.	*Ind. Pluperf.*, monuĕram,	monītus ĕram, *etc.*
Ind. Fut.,	monēbo,	monēbor.	*Ind. F. Perf.*, monuĕro,	monītus ĕro, *etc.*
Subj. Pres.,	moneam,	monear.	*Subj. Perfect*, monuĕrim,	monītus sim, *etc.*
Subj. Imp.,	monērem,	monērer.	*Subj. Pluper.*, monuissem,	monītus essem, *etc.*
Imperative,	mŏne,	monēre.	*Inf. Perfect*, monuisse,	monītus esse, *etc.*
Inf. Pres.,	monēre,	monēri.		
Part. Pres.,	mŏnens,	———	Third Root.	
Part. Fut.,	———	monendus.	*Inf. Future*, monitūrus esse,	monītum iri.
Gerund,	monendi,	———	*Part. Fut.*, monitūrus.	———
			Supine, *Former*, monītum.	*Latter*, monītu.

272. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.			PASSIVE VOICE.		
Pres. Ind.,	rĕg-o,	*to rule.*	*Pres. Ind.*,	rĕg-or,	*to be ruled.*
Pres. Inf.,	reg-ĕre,		*Pres. Inf.*,	rĕg-i,	
Perf. Ind.,	rex-i,		*Perf. Part.*,	rect-us,	
Supine,	rect-um,				

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I rule, do rule*, or *am ruling.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I am ruled.*
Singular.	1. rĕg-o,	rĕg-or,
	2. rĕg-is,	reg-ĕris, *or* -ĕre,
	3. rĕg-it;	reg-ĭtur;
Plural.	1. reg-ĭmus,	reg-ĭmur,
	2. reg-ītis,	reg-imĭni,
	3. rĕg-unt.	reg-untur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	I rule, did rule, or *was ruling.*	*I was ruled.*
Singular.	1. reg-ēbam,	reg-ēbar,
	2. reg-ēbas,	reg-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,
	3. reg-ēbat;	reg-ebātur;
Plural.	1. reg-ebāmus,	reg-ebāmur,
	2. reg-ebātis,	reg-ebamĭni,
	3. reg-ēbant.	rĕg-ebantur.

FUTURE TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I shall* or *will rule.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *He shall* or *will be ruled.*
Singular.	1. rĕg-am,	reg-ar,
	2. rĕg-ēs,	reg-ēris, *or* -ēre,
	3. rĕg-ēt;	reg-ētur;
Plural.	1. reg-ēmus,	reg-ēmur,
	2. reg-ētis,	reg-emĭni,
	3. rĕg-ent.	reg-entur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	I ruled, did rule, or *have ruled.*	*I was,* or *have been ruled.*
Singular.	1. rex-i,	rectus sum, *or* fui,
	2. rex-isti,	rectus ĕs, *or* fuisti,
	3. rex-it;	rectus est, *or* fuit;
Plural.	1. rex-ĭmus,	recti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus,
	2. rex-istis,	recti estis, *or* fuistis,
	3. rex-ērunt, *or* -ēre.	recti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	I had ruled.	*I had been ruled.*
Singular.	1. rex-ĕram,	rectus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,
	2. rex-ĕras,	rectus ĕras, *or* fuĕras,
	3. rex-ĕrat;	rectus ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat;
Plural.	1. rex-erāmus,	recti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,
	2. rex-erātis,	recti erātis, *or* fuerātis,
	3. rex-ĕrant.	recti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

	I shall have ruled.	*I shall have been ruled.*
Singular.	1. rex-ĕro,	rectus ĕro, *or* fuĕro,
	2. rex-ĕris,	rectus ĕris, *or* fuĕris,
	3. rex-ĕrit;	rectus ĕrit, *or* fuĕrit;
Plural.	1. rex-erĭmus,	recti erĭmus, *or* fuerĭmus,
	2. rex-erĭtis,	recti erĭtis, *or* fuerĭtis,
	3. rex-ĕrint.	recti ĕrint, *or* fuĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	I may or *can rule.*	*I may* or *can be ruled.*
Singular.	1. rĕg-am,	rĕg-ar,
	2. rĕg-as,	reg-āris, *or* -āre,
	3. rĕg-at;	reg-ātur;
Plural.	1. reg-āmus,	reg-āmur,
	2. reg-ātis,	reg-amĭni,
	3. rĕg-ant.	reg-antur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I might, could, would,* or *should rule.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I might, could, would,* or *should be ruled.*
Singular.	1. reg-ĕrem,	reg-ĕrer,
	2. reg-ĕres,	reg-erēris, *or* -erēre,
	3. reg-ĕret;	reg-erētur;
Plural.	1. reg-erēmus,	reg-erēmur,
	2. reg-erētis,	reg-eremĭni,
	3. reg-ĕrent.	reg-erentur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	I may have ruled.	*I may have been ruled.*
Singular.	1. rex-ĕrim,	rectus sim, *or* fuĕrim,
	2. rex-ĕris,	rectus sis, *or* fuĕris,
	3. rex-ĕrit;	rectus sit, *or* fuĕrit;
Plural.	1. rex-erĭmus,	recti sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,
	2. rex-erītis,	recti sitis, *or* fuerītis,
	3. rex-ĕrint.	recti sint, *or* fuĕrint.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	I might, could, would, or *should have ruled.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been ruled.*
Singular.	1. rex-issem,	rectus essem, *or* fuissem,
	2. rex-isses,	rectus esses, *or* fuisses,
	3. rex-isset;	rectus esset, *or* fuisset;
Plural.	1. rex-issēmus,	recti essēmus, *or* fuissēmus,
	2. rex-issētis,	recti essētis, *or* fuissētis,
	3. rex-issent.	recti essent, *or* fuissent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Rule thou, or *do thou rule.*	*Be thou ruled,* or *do thou be ruled.*
Singular.	2. rĕg-e, *or* -ĭto,	reg-ĕre, *or* -ĭtor,
	3. reg-ĭto;	reg-ĭtor;
Plural.	2. reg-ĭte, *or* -itōte,	reg-imĭni,
	3. reg-unto.	reg-untor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To rule.	*To be ruled.*
Present, reg-ĕre, *to rule;*	*Present,* rĕg-i, *to be ruled;*
Perfect, rex-isse, *to have ruled;*	*Perfect,* rect-us esse, *or* fuisse, *to have been ruled;*
Future, rect-ūrus esse, *to be about to rule;*	*Future,* rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*
F. Perf., rect-ūrus fuisse, *to have been about to rule.*	

PARTICIPLES.

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Present, rĕg-ens, *ruling;*	*Perfect*, rect-us, *ruled*, or *being ruled;*
Future, rect-ūrus, *about to rule.*	*Future*, reg-endus, *to be ruled, worthy* or *proper to be ruled.*

SUPINES.

Former, rect-um, *to rule.* *Latter*, rect-u, *to be ruled.*

GERUND.

Genitive,	regendi,	*of ruling;*
Dative,	regendo,	*to* or *for ruling;*
Accusative,	regendum,	*ruling;*
Ablative,	regendo,	*in, with, by ruling.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF *REGO*.

	First Root, *Reg.*		Second Root, *Rex.*	Third Root, *Rect.*
	active.	passive.	active.	passive.
Ind. Pres.,	rĕgo,	rĕgor.	*Ind. Perfect*, rexi,	rectus sum, *etc.*
Ind. Imp.,	regēbam,	regēbar.	*Ind. Pluperf.*, rexĕram,	rectus ĕram, *etc.*
Ind. Fut.,	rĕgam,	rĕgar.	*Ind. F. Perf.*, rexĕro,	rectus ĕro, *etc.*
Subj. Pres.,	rĕgam,	rĕgar.	*Subj. Perfect*, rexĕrim,	rectus sim, *etc.*
Subj. Imp.,	regĕrem,	regĕrer.	*Subj. Pluper.*, rexissem,	rectus essem, *etc.*
Imperative,	rĕge,	regĕre.	*Inf. Perfect*, rexisse,	rectus esse, *etc.*
Inf. Pres.,	regĕre,	rĕgi.		
Part. Pres.,	rĕgens.	——		
Part. Fut.,	——	regendus.		
Gerund,	regendi.			

	Third Root.	
Inf. Future,	rectūrus esse,	rectum iri.
Part. Future,	rectūrus.	——
Part. Perfect,	——	rectus.
Supine,	*Former*, rectum.	*Latter*, rectu.

273. Form in *IO*—"Capio."

Active voice.		Passive voice.	
Pres. Indic., cap-io,		*Pres. Indic.*, cap-ior,	
Pres. Infin., cap-ĕre,	*to take.*	*Pres. Infin.*, căp-i,	*to be taken.*
Perf. Indic., cēp-i,		*Perf. Part.*, capt-us,	
Supine, capt-um,			

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Active voice. *I take, do take,* or *am taking.*	Passive voice. *I am taken.*
Singular.	1. căp-io,	cap-ior,
	2. căp-is,	cap-ĕris, *or* -ĕre,
	3. căp-it;	cap-ĭtur;
Plural.	1. cap-ĭmus,	cap-ĭmur,
	2. cap-ĭtis,	cap-imĭni,
	3. cap-iunt.	cap-iuntur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
	I took, did take, or *was taking.*	*I was taken.*
Singular.	1. cap-iēbam,	cap-iēbar,
	2. cap-iēbas,	cap-iebāris, *or* -iebāre,
	3. cap-iēbat;	cap-iebātur;
Plural.	1. cap-iebāmus,	cap-iebāmur,
	2. cap-iebātis,	cap-iebamĭni,
	3. cap-iēbant.	cap-iebantur.

FUTURE TENSE.

	I shall or *will take.*	*I shall* or *will be taken.*
Singular.	1. cap-iam,	cap-iar,
	2. cap-iēs,	cap-ēris, *or* -ēre,
	3. cap-iēt;	cap-iētur;
Plural.	1. cap-iēmus,	cap-iēmur,
	2. cap-iētis,	cap-iemĭni,
	3. cap-ient.	cap-ientur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	I took, did take, or *have taken.*	*I was* or *have been taken.*
Singular.	1. cēp-i,	capt-us sum, *or* fui,
	2. cep-isti,	capt-us ĕs, *or* fuisti,
	3. cēp-it; *etc.*	capt-us est, *or* fuit; *etc.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	I had taken.	*I had been taken.*
Singular.	1. cep-ĕram,	capt-us ĕram, *or* fuĕram,
	2. cep-ĕras,	capt-us ĕras, *or* fuĕras,
	3. cep-ĕrat; *etc.*	capt-us ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat; *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

	I shall or *will have taken.*	*I shall* or *will have been taken.*
Singular.	1. cep-ĕro,	capt-us ĕro, *or* fuĕro,
	2. cep-ĕris,	capt-us ĕris, *or* fuĕris,
	3. cep-ĕrit; *etc.*	capt-us ĕrit, *or* fuĕrit; *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	I may or *can take.*	*I may* or *can be taken.*
Singular.	1. cap-iam,	cap-iar,
	2. cap-ias,	cap-iāris, *or* -iāre,
	3. cap-iat; *etc.*	cap-iātur; *etc.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
	I might, could, would, or *should take.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be taken.*
Singular.	1. cap-ĕrem,	cap-ĕrer,
	2. cap-ĕres,	cap-erēris, *or* -erēre,
	3. cap-ĕret; *etc.*	cap-eretur; *etc.*

PERFECT TENSE.

	I may have taken.	*I may have been taken.*
Singular.	1. cep-ĕrim,	captus sim, *or* fuĕrim,
	2. cep-ĕris,	captus sis, *or* fuĕris,
	3. cep-ĕrit; *etc.*	captus sit, *or* fuĕrit; *etc.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	I might, could, would, or *should have taken.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been taken.*
Singular.	1. cep-issem,	captus essem, *or* fuissem,
	2. cep-isses,	captus esses, *or* fuisses,
	3. cep-isset; *etc.*	captus esset, *or* fuisset; *etc.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Take thou, or *do thou take.*	*Be thou taken,* or *do thou be taken.*
Singular.	2. căp-e, *or* -ĭto,	cap-ĕre, *or* -ĭtor,
	3. cap-ĭto;	cap-ĭtor;
Plural.	2. cap-ĭte, *or* -itōte,	cap-imĭni,
	3. cap-iunto.	cap-iuntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To take.	*To be taken.*
Present, cap-ĕre, *to take;*	*Present,* căp-i, *to be taken;*
Perfect, cep-isse, *to have taken;*	*Perfect,* capt-us esse, *or* fuisse, *to have been taken;*
Future, capt-ūrus esse, *to be about to take;*	*Future,* capt-um iri, *to be about to be taken.*
F. Perf., capt-ūrus fuisse, *to have been about to take.*	

PARTICIPLES.

Present, cap-iens, *taking;*	*Perfect,* capt-us, *taken,* or *being taken;*
Future, capt-ūrus, *about to take,* or *going to take.*	*Future,* cap-iendus, *to be taken, worthy* or *proper to be taken.*

SUPINES.—*Former,* capt-um, *to take.* *Latter,* capt-u, *to be taken.*

GERUND.—Cap-iendi; cap-iendo; cap-iendum; cap-iendo.

274. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.			PASSIVE VOICE.		
Pres. Ind.,	aud-io,		*Pres. Ind.*,	aud-ior,	
Pres. Inf.,	aud-īre,	*to hear.*	*Pres. Inf.*,	aud-īri,	*to be heard.*
Perf. Ind.,	audīv-i,		*Perf. Part.*,	audīt-us,	
Supine,	audīt-um,				

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I hear, do hear, or am hearing.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I am heard.*
Singular.	1. aud-io,	aud-ior,
	2. aud-is,	aud-īris, *or* -īre,
	3. aud-it;	aud-ītur;
Plural.	1. aud-īmus,	aud-īmur,
	2. aud-ītis,	aud-imĭni,
	3. aud-iunt.	aud-iuntur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	I hear, did hear, or was hearing.	*I was heard.*
Singular.	1. aud-iēbam,	aud-iēbar,
	2. aud-iēbas,	aud-iebāris, *or* -iebāre,
	3. aud-iēbat;	aud-iebātur;
Plural.	1. aud-iebāmus,	aud-iebāmur,
	2. aud-iebātis,	aud-iebamĭni,
	3. aud-iēbant.	aud-iebantur.

FUTURE TENSE.

	I shall or will hear.	*I shall or will be heard.*
Singular.	1. aud-iam,	aud-iar,
	2. aud-ies,	aud-iēris, *or* -iēre,
	3. aud-iet;	aud-iētur;
Plural.	1. aud-iēmus,	aud-iēmur,
	2. aud-iētis,	aud-iemĭni,
	3. aud-ient.	aud-ientur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	heard, did hear, or have heard.	*I was or have been heard.*
Singular.	1. audīv-i,	audīt-us sum, *or* fui,
	2. audiv-isti,	audīt-us ĕs, *or* fuisti,
	3. audīv-it;	audīt-us est, or fuit;
Plural.	1. audiv-ĭmus,	audīti sŭmus, *or* fuĭmus,
	2. audiv-istis,	audīti estis, *or* fuistis,
	3. audiv-ērunt, *or* -ēre.	audīti sunt, fuērunt, *or* fuēre.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I had heard.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I had been heard.*
Singular.	1. audiv-ĕram,	audīt-us ĕram, *or* fuĕram,
	2. audiv-ĕras,	audīt-us ĕras, *or* fuĕras,
	3. audiv-ĕrat;	audīt-us ĕrat, *or* fuĕrat;
Plural.	1. audiv-erāmus,	audīti erāmus, *or* fuerāmus,
	2. audiv-erātis,	audīti erātis, *or* fuerātis,
	3. audiv-ĕrant.	audīti ĕrant, *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

	I shall or *will have heard.*	*I shall* or *will have been heard.*
Singular.	1. audiv-ĕro,	audīt-us ĕro, *or* fuĕro,
	2. audiv-ĕris,	audīt-us ĕris, *or* fuĕris,
	3. audiv-ĕrit;	audīt-us ĕrit, *or* fuĕrit;
Plural.	1. audiv-erĭmus,	audīti erĭmus, *or* fuerĭmus,
	2. audiv-erĭtis,	audīti erĭtis, *or* fuerĭtis,
	3. audiv-ĕrint.	audīti ĕrint, *or* fuĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	I may or *can hear.*	*I may* or *can be heard.*
Singular.	1. aud-iam,	aud-iar,
	2. aud-ias,	aud-iāris, *or* -iāre.
	3. aud-iat;	aud-iātur;
Plural.	1. aud-iāmus,	aud-iāmur,
	2. aud-iātis,	aud-iamĭni,
	3. aud-iant.	aud-iantur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	I might, could, would, or *should hear.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be heard.*
Singular.	1. aud-īrem,	aud-īrer,
	2. aud-īres,	aud-irēris, *or* -irēre,
	3. aud-īret;	aud-irētur;
Plural.	1. aud-irēmus,	aud-irēmur,
	2. aud-irētis,	aud-iremĭni,
	3. aud-īrent.	aud-irentur.

PERFECT TENSE.

	I may have heard.	*I may have been heard.*
Singular.	1. audiv-ĕrim,	audīt-us sim, *or* fuĕrim,
	2. audiv-ĕris,	audītus sis, *or* fuĕris,
	3. audiv-ĕrit;	audīt-us sit, *or* fuĕrit;
Plural.	1. audiv-erĭmus,	audīt-i sīmus, *or* fuerĭmus,
	2. audiv-erĭtis,	audīt-i sītis, *or* fuerĭtis,
	3. audiv-ĕrint.	audīt-i sint, *or* fuĕrint.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE. *I might, could, would,* or *should have heard.*	PASSIVE VOICE. *I might, could, would,* or *should have been heard.*
Singular.	1. audiv-issem, 2. audiv-isses, 3. audiv-isset;	audīt-us essem, *or* fuissem, audīt-us esses, or fuisses, audīt-us esset, or fuisset;
Plural.	1. audiv-issēmus, 2. audiv-issētis, 3. audiv-issent.	audīt-i essēmus, *or* fuissēmus, audīt-i essētis, *or* fuissētis, audīt-i essent, *or* fuissent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Hear thou, or *do thou hear.*	*Be thou heard,* or *do thou be heard.*
Singular.	2. aud-i, *or* -īto, 3. aud-īto;	aud-īre, *or* -ītor, aud-ītor;
Plural.	2. aud-īte, *or* -ītote, 3. aud-iunto.	aud-imĭni, aud-iuntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To hear.	*To be heard.*
Present, aud-īre, *to hear;*	*Pres.,* aud-īri, *to be heard;*
Perfect, audiv-isse, *to have heard;*	*Perf.,* audīt-us esse, *or* fuisse, *to have been heard;*
Future, audit-ūrus esse, *to be about to hear;*	*Fut.,* audīt-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*
F. Perf., audit-ūrus fuisse, *to have been about to hear.*	

PARTICIPLES.

Present, aud-iens, *hearing;*	*Perf.,* audīt-us, *heard,* or *being heard;*
Future, audit-ūrus, *about to hear,* or *going to hear.*	*Fut.,* aud-iendus, *to be heard, worthy* or *proper to be heard.*

SUPINES.

Former, audīt-um, *to hear.* *Latter,* audīt-u, *to be heard.*

GERUND.

Genitive,	aud-iendi,	*of hearing;*
Dative,	aud-iendo,	*to* or *for hearing;*
Accusative,	aud-iendum,	*hearing;*
Ablative,	aud-iendo,	*in, with, by hearing.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE FORMATION OF *AUDIO*.

	First Root, *Aud.*		Second Root, *Audīv.*	Third Root, *Audīt.*
	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Ind. Pres.,	audi*o*,	audi*or*.	*Ind. Perfect*, audīvi,	audīt*us* sum, *etc.*
Ind. Imp.,	audi*ēbam*,	audi*ēbar*.	*Ind. Pluperf.*, audivĕr*am*,	audīt*us* ĕram, *etc.*
Ind. Fut.,	audi*am*,	audi*ar*.	*Ind. F. Perf.*, audivĕr*o*,	audīt*us* ĕro, *etc.*
Subj. Pres.,	audi*am*,	audi*ar*.	*Subj. Perfect*, audivĕr*im*,	audīt*us* sim, *etc.*
Subj. Imp.,	audī*rem*,	audī*rer*.	*Subj. Pluper.*, audivi*ssem*,	audīt*us* essem, *etc.*
Imperative,	audi,	audī*re*.	*Inf. Perfect*, audivi*sse*,	audīt*us* esse, *etc.*
Inf. Pres.,	audī*re*,	audī*ri*.		
Part. Pres.,	audi*ens*.	——	THIRD ROOT.	
Part. Fut.,	——	audi*endus*.	*Inf. Future*, auditūr*us* esse,	audīt*um* iri.
Gerund,	audi*endi*.	——	*Part. Future*, auditūr*us*.	——
			Supine, *Former*, audīt*um*.	*Latter*, audīt*u*.

DEPONENT VERBS.

275. How are deponent verbs formed and conjugated?

DEPONENT VERBS are formed and conjugated like the passive voice of regular verbs of the same conjugation, but they take their signification from the active voice. Thus,

Mīror, *to admire* (dep., first conj.), like *ămor*. (270.)
Polliceor, *to promise* (dep., second conj.), like *moneor*. (271.)
Utor, *to use* (dep., third conj.), like *rĕgor*. (272.)
Metior, *to measure* (dep., fourth conj.), like *audior*. (274.)

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

276. How are neuter passive verbs formed and conjugated?

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS, according as their tenses are active or passive in form, are formed and conjugated like the active or passive voice of the same tenses of the conjugation to which they belong.

277. What tenses take the passive form?

The tenses of neuter passive verbs which take the passive form are the perfect and pluperfect, in both the indicative and subjunctive moods, also the future perfect and perfect infinitive. The neuter passive verb *audeo*, I dare, forms the tenses as follows:

Ind. Perf., ausus sum, *or* fui,
Ind. Plup., ausus ĕram, *or* fuĕram,
Fut. Perf., ausus ĕro, *or* fuĕro,
Subj. Pres., ausus sim, *or* fuĕrim,
Subj. Plup., ausus essem, *or* fuissem,
Inf. Perf., ausus esse, *or* fuisse.

278. Are there many verbs of this class?

There are only four neuter passive verbs; three of the second conjugation, and one of the third—namely,

Second conj.,	audeo,	audēre,	ausus,	*to dare.*
Second conj.,	gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavīsus,	*to rejoice.*
Second conj.,	soleo,	solēre,	solĭtus,	*to be accustomed.*
Third conj.,	fīdo,	fidĕre,	fīsus,	*to trust.*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

279. What is the periphrastic conjugation?

The periphrastic conjugation in Latin is a combination of the *future participles* in *rus* and in *dus* with the verb *sum*. The former constitutes the periphrastic conjugation *active*, and the latter the periphrastic conjugation *passive*.

280. What is the signification of these conjugations?

The combination of the future in *rus* with *sum* implies an *immediate* future; as, *amatūrus sum*, I am about or going to love *immediately*, or *very soon*.

The combination of the future in *dus* with *sum* implies worthiness or desert; as, *amandus sum*, I am *worthy* to be, *deserve* to be, or *ought* to be loved.

281. Repeat the tenses of these two conjugations?

FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.			about to love.	Passive Voice.	
Present,	amatūrus sum,	*I am*		*Pres.*,	amatūrus sim,
Imper.,	amatūrus ĕram,	*I was*		*Imp.*,	amatūrus essem,
Future,	amatūrus ĕro,	*I shall be*		*Perf.*,	amatūrus fuĕrim,
Perfect,	amatūrus fui,	*I have been*		*Plup.*,	amatūrus fuissem.
Pluper.,	amatūrus fuĕram,	*I had been*			

Infinitive. { *Present*, amatūrus esse, / *Perfect*, amatūrus fuisse.

SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Present, amandus sum,
Imperfect, amandus ĕram, } etc., *like the first.*
Future, amandus ĕro,

IRREGULAR VERBS.

282. Which are the irregular verbs?

The IRREGULAR VERBS are commonly reckoned *six;* namely, *sum*, *vŏlo*, *fĕro*, *ĕdo*, *fīo*, *eo*, and their compounds.

283. Of what are *prosum* and *possum* compounded?

Prōsum, *to do good*, is compounded of prō, *for*, and sum, *I am*. Possum, *to be able*, is compounded of pōtis, *able*, and sum, *I am*, contracted into possum.

284. Of what are *nōlo* and *mālo* compounded?

Nōlo, *I am unwilling*, and mālo, *I am more willing*, are compounds of vŏlo. The former is compounded of *non* and *vŏlo*, contracted into *nōlo*, and the latter of *măgis* and *vŏlo*, contracted into *mālo*.

285. Where and why does *prosum* insert *d*?

Prōsum inserts *d* where the simple verb begins with *e*, for euphony, or easiness of pronunciation.

286. Proceed now to conjugate the irregular verbs *prōsum*, *possum*, etc.

PROSUM, PRODESSE, PROFUI, *to do good.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	prōsum,	prōdes,	prōdest;	prosŭmus,	prodestis,	prōsunt.
Imperf.,	prod-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Future,	prod-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrunt.
Perfect,	profu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Pluper.,	profu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
F. Perf.,	profu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	prōsim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imperf.,	prod-essem,	-esses,	-esset;	-essēmus,	-essētis,	-essent.
Perfect,	profu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Pluper.,	profu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular. { 2. prōdes, *or* prodesto, 3. prodesto. *Plural.* { 2. prodeste, *or* prodestōte, 3. prosunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, prodesse; *Future*, profutūrus esse;
Perfect, profuisse; *Future Perfect*, profutūrus fuisse.

PARTICIPLE.—profutūrus.

287. Possum, Posse, Potui, *I am able, I can.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest;	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Imperf.,	pot-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Future,	pot-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrunt.
Perfect,	potu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-uĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Pluper.,	potu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
F. Perf.,	potu-ĕro,	-ĕris.	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imperf.,	pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
Perfect,	potu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Pluper.,	potu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD,

Present, posse; *Perfect*, potuisse. (*The rest wanting.*)

288. Eo, Ire, Ivi, Itum, *to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Imperf.,	ībam,	ības,	ībat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ībant.
Future,	ībo,	ībis,	ībit;	ibĭmus,	ibĭtis,	ībunt.
Perfect,	īvi,	ivisti,	īvit;	ivĭmus,	ivistis,	ivērunt, *or* -ēre.
Pluper.,	iv-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
F. Perf.,	iv-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
Imperf.,	īrem,	īres,	īret;	irēmus,	irētis,	īrent.
Present,	iv-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	ĕrit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ĕrint.
Pluper.,	iv-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Present,	ī, *or* īto,	īto;	īte, *or* itōte,	eunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	īre;	*Future*,	itūrus esse;
Perfect,	ivisse;	*Future Perfect*,	itūrus fuisse.

PARTICIPLES.		GERUNDS.	SUPINES.
Present, iens.	*Gen.*, euntis.	*Gen.*, eundi,	*Former*, ĭtum;
Future, itūrus, -ūra, -ūrum.		*Dat.*, eundo, *etc.*	*Latter*, ĭtu.

289. VOLO, VELLE, VOLUI, *to will, to be willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	vŏlo,	vis,	vult;	volŭmus,	vultis,	vŏlunt.
Imperf.,	vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Future,	vŏl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
Perfect,	volu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Pluper.,	volu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
F. Perf.,	volu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Present,	vĕlim,	vĕlis,	vĕlit;	velīmus,	velītis,	vĕlint.
Imperf.,	vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
Perfect,	volu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Pluper.,	volu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.		PARTICIPLE.
Present, velle;	*Perfect*, voluisse.	*Present*, vŏlens.

290. NOLO, NOLLE, NOLUI, *to be unwilling.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Pres.,	nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nol-ŭmus,	non-vultis,	nōlunt.
Imp.,	nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	ebātis,	-ēbant.
Fut.,	nōl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
Perf.,	nōlu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plup.,	nōlu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
F. P.,	nōlu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Pres.,	nōlim,	nōlis,	nōlit;	nolīmus,	nolītis,	nolint.
Imp.,	nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
Perf.,	nolu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plup.,	nolu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular. { 2. nōli, *or* nolīto, 3. nolīto. *Plural.* { 2. nolīte, *or* nolitōte, 3. nolunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, nolle,
Perfect, noluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Present, nōlens.
(*The rest wanting.*)

291. MALO, MALLE, MALUI, *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Pres.,	mālo,	māvis,	māvult;	malŭmus,	mavultis,	mālunt.
Imp.,	mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Fut.,	māl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
Perf.,	malu-i,	-isti,	-it,	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plup.,	malu-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
F. P.,	mālu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Pres.,	mālim,	mālis,	mālit;	malīmus,	malītis,	mālint.
Imp.,	mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
Perf.,	malu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plup.,	malu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*Pres.*, malle; *Perf.*, maluisse. (*The rest not used.*)

292. FERO, *to bring, carry,* or *suffer.*

Active Voice.			Passive Voice.		
Pres. Indic.,	fĕro,		*Pres. Indic.*,	fĕror,	
Pres. Infin.,	ferre,	*to bring.*	*Pres. Infin.*,	ferri,	*to be brought.*
Perf. Indic.,	tŭli,		*Perf. Part.*,	lātus	
Supine,	lātum,				

INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Sing. 1.	fĕro, *I bring;*	fĕror, *I am brought;*
2.	fers, *thou bringest;*	ferris, *or* -re, *thou art brought;*
3.	fert, *he brings.*	fertur, *he is brought.*
Plur. 1.	ferĭmus, *we bring;*	ferĭmur, *we are brought;*
2.	fertis, *ye bring;*	ferimĭni, *ye are brought;*
3.	fĕrunt, *they bring.*	feruntur, *they are brought.*

Imp.,	fer-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat, *etc.;*	fer-ēbar, -ēbaris *or* -re,	-ebātur, *etc.*
Fut.,	fĕr-am,	-es,	-et, *etc.;*	fĕr-ar, -ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur, *etc.*
Perf.,	tŭl-i,	-isti,	-it, *etc.;*	lātus sum *or* fui,	*etc.*
Plup.,	tŭl-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat, *etc.;*	lātus ĕram *or* fuĕram,	*etc.*
F. P.,	tŭl-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit, *etc.;*	lātus ĕro *or* fuĕro,	*etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.,	fĕr-am,	-as,	-at, *etc.;*	fĕr-ar, -āris *or* -āre,	-ātur, *etc.*
Imp.,	fer-rem,	-res,	-ret, *etc.;*	fer-rer, -rēris *or* -rēre,	-rētur, *etc.*
Perf.,	tŭl-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit, *etc.;*	lātus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*etc.*
Plup.,	tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset, *etc.;*	lātus essem *or* fuissem,	*etc.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular,	fĕr *or* ferto,		ferto;	ferre *or* fertor,	fertor.
Plural,	ferte *or* fertōte,		ferunto;	ferimĭni,	feruntor.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	ferre,	*Present*,	ferri,
Perfect,	tulisse,	*Perfect*,	lātus esse *or* fuisse,
Future,	latūrus esse,	*Future*,	lātum iri.
Fut. Perf.,	latūrus fuisse.		

PARTICIPLES.

Present,	ferens,	*Perfect*,	lātus, -a, -um,
Future,	latūrus, -ūra, -ūrum.	*Future*,	ferendus, -a, -um.

SUPINES.	GERUNDS.
Former, lātum; *Latter*, lātu.	*Gen.*, ferendi; *Dat.*, ferendo, *etc.*

293. Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive?

Fio is used as the passive of *facio*, from which it takes its third root, *factus*. It is conjugated as follows:

FIO, FIERI, FACTUS, *to be made, done,* or *become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	fīo,	fīs	fīt;	fīmus,	fītis,	fiunt.
Imperf.,	fī-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Future,	fī-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

Perfect, factus sum *or* fui, factus es *or* fuisti, *etc.*
Pluper., factus ĕram *or* fuĕram, factus ĕras *or* fuĕras, *etc.*
F. Perf., factus ĕro *or* fuĕro, factus ĕris *or* fuĕris, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present,	fīam,	fīas,	fīat;	fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.
Imperf.,	fī-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-ĕrent.

Perfect, factus sim *or* fuĕrim, factus sis *or* fuĕris, *etc.*
Pluper., factus essem *or* fuissem, factus esses *or* fuisses, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular, fī *or* fīto, fīto. *Plural*, fīte *or* fītōte, fiunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, fiĕri; *Perfect*, factus esse *or* fuisse; *Future*, factum īri.

PARTICIPLES.		SUPINE.
Perfect, factus, -a, -um.	*Future*, faciendus, -a, -um.	factu.

294. Is *ĕdo*, to eat, altogether an irregular verb?

EDO, *to eat*, is a regular verb of the third conjugation, but it has an irregular form resembling *sum* in the present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive.

295. Conjugate the verb as far as these tenses are concerned.

ĔDO, ĔDERE *or* ESSE, ĒDI, ĒSUM, *to eat.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres., ĕdo, ĕdis *or* ēs, ĕdit *or* est; ĕdĭmus, ĕdĭtis *or* estis, ĕdunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imp., {	ĕdĕrem,	ĕdĕres,	ĕdĕret,	ederēmus,	ederētis,	ĕdĕrent.
	or essem,	esses,	esset;	essēmus,	essētis,	essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2.	ĕde *or* ĕdĭto,	ĕdĭto,	ĕdīte *or* editōte,	edunto.
3.	ēs *or* esto,	esto,	este *or* estōte,	

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

296. What are defective verbs?

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those in which some of their parts are wanting.

297. What defective verbs are termed *præteritive*, and why?

Odi, I hate; *cœpi*, I begin; *memĭni*, I remember, are called *præteritive verbs*, because they are used only in the *præterite* (perfect) tense, and the tenses derived from it.

298. What significations has *cœpi?*

Cœpi has a *present* as well as a *perfect* signification, and an *imperfect* as well as a *pluperfect* meaning, and also a *future* as well as a *future perfect* meaning; thus,

Perfect,	cœpi,	*I begin*, or *I have begun;*
Pluperfect,	cœpĕram,	*I began*, or *I had begun;*
Fut. Perfect,	cœpĕro,	*I shall begin*, or *I shall have begun.*

299. What significations have *odi* and *memini?*

Odi and *memĭni* have the meanings only of the *present, imperfect, and future;* thus, *odi*, I hate; *oděram*, I hated; *oděro*, I shall *or* will hate.

SYNOPSIS OF THE PRÆTERITIVE VERBS.

Odi, oděram, oděro, oděrim, odissem, odisse.

Participles, ōsus, osūrus.

Cœpi, cœpĕram, cœpĕro, cœpĕrim, cœpissem, cœpisse.

Participles, cœptus, cœptūrus.

Memĭni, meminĕram, meminĕro, meminĕrim, meminissem, meminisse.

Imperative, memento, mementōte.

300. How is the perfect *nōvi*, from *nosco*, used?

The perfect *nōvi*, from *nosco*, I know, is used *præteritively*, and, like *odi* and *memĭni*, has the sense only of the *present, imperfect*, and *future:* I know, I have known, I shall know.

301. Repeat the

SYNOPSIS OF *NŌVI*, WITH THE CONTRACTIONS.

Nōvi, { novĕram, / nóram, } novĕro; { novĕrim, / nórim, novissem, / nóssem, novisse, / nósse.

302. What is to be remarked as to *do*, to give, and *fāri*, to speak?

Do is not used in the first person passive, either in the indicative or subjunctive; that is, it has neither *dor* nor *der*. *Fāri* is used chiefly by the poets, and principally in the third person singular *fātur*, the imperative *fare*, the participle *fātus*, the genitive and ablative gerund *fandi*, *fando*, and supine *fātu*.

303. What is the difference between *aio*, I say, and *inquam*, I say?

Aio, I say, means *I affirm*; *inquam*, I say, is used only in quotations, and is always interposed between some part of the quotation; as, "*Quæ nunc tellus*," *inquit*, "*quæ me æquora*," etc.

304. Conjugate *aio*, *inquam*, *fŏrem*, etc.

1. Aio, *I say, I affirm.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Ind. Pres.,	aio,	aïs,	aït;	——	——	aiunt.
Ind. Imp.,	ai-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Ind. Perf.,	——	aïsti,	aït.			
Subj. Pres.,	——	aïas,	aïat;	——	——	aïant.
Imp. Pres.,	——	aï,	——			
Part. Pres.,	aiens.					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Ind. Pres.,	inquam,	inquis,	inquit;	inquĭmus,	inquĭtis,	inquiunt.
Ind. Imp.,	——	——	inquiēbat;	——	——	inquiēbant.
Ind. Fut.,	——	inquies,	inquiet.			
Ind. Perf.,	——	inquisti,	inquit.			
Imp. Pres.,	——	inque,	inquito;	——	inquĭte,	——
Part. Pres.,	inquiens.					

3. Forem, *I should be.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Subj. Imp.,	fŏrem,	fŏres,	fŏret;	——	——	fŏrent.
Inf. Fut.,	fŏre, *to be about to be*,			(*same as* futūrum esse.)		

4. Ave, *hail.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.
Imp. Pres., ave *or* avēto;	avēte *or* avetōte.	*Inf. Pres.*, avēre.

5. SALVE, *hail.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Ind. Fut.,	—— salvēbis.	——
Imp. Pres.,	salve *or* salvēto;	salvēte *or* salvetōte.
Inf. Pres.,	salvēre.	

6. CEDO, *tell, give.*

			Contracted.
Imp. Pres.,	SINGULAR, cĕdo;	PLURAL, cĕdo *or* cedĭte,	cette.

7. QUÆSO, *I beseech.*

Ind. Pres.,	SINGULAR, quæso;	PLURAL, quæsŭmus.

305. For what are *ausim*, *faxim*, and *faxo* used?

Ausim is used for *ausĕrim*, from *audeo*, I dare; *faxim* and *faxo* for *fecĕrim* and *fecĕro*, from *facio*.

306. For what are *sīs*, *sultis*, and *sōdes* used?

Sīs, *sultis*, and *sōdes* are contractions of the conjunction *si* and a verb; as, *sis* for *si vis; sultis* for *si vultis;* and *sōdes* for *si audes*, with the meaning, *I pray you.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

307. What are impersonal verbs?

IMPERSONAL VERBS are those which are used only in the third person singular. They have no nominative, and are translated with the English pronoun *it* before them; as, *delectat*, it delights; *contingit*, it happens.

308. Repeat the synopsis of the impersonal verbs *delectat*, *dĕcet*, *contingit*, and *evĕnit.*

	FIRST CONJ.	SECOND CONJ.	THIRD CONJ.	FOURTH CONJ.
Ind. Present,	delectat,	dĕcet,	contingit,	evĕnit,
Ind. Imperf.,	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
Ind. Future,	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
Ind. Perfect,	delectāvit,	decuit,	contĭgit,	evēnit,
Ind. Pluperf.,	delectavĕrat,	decuĕrat,	contigĕrat,	evenĕrat,
Ind. F. Perf.,	delectavĕrit.	decuĕrit.	contigĕrit.	evenĕrit.
Subj. Present,	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
Subj. Imperf.,	delectāret,	decēret,	contingĕret,	evenīret,
Subj. Perfect,	delectavĕrit,	decuĕrit,	contigĕrit,	evenĕrit,
Subj. Pluper.,	delectavisset.	decuisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
Inf. Present,	delectāre,	decēre,	contingĕre,	evenīre,
Inf. Perfect,	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

309. What should be noticed as to the verb *evĕnit?*

In *evĕnit* it should be noticed that the penult of the present is *short*, while that of the perfect is *long;* as, *evĕnit, evēnit.* This affects the pronunciation, (*see* 25, 2d, 3d).

310. Is a verb, not impersonal in itself, ever used impersonally?

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, it is fought; *favētur*, it is favored; *currĭtur*, it is run; *venītur*, it is come.

311. How may impersonal verbs be applied to any person or number?

Impersonal verbs may be applied to any person or number by placing *after them* the personal pronouns in the case which the verb, used personally, governs.

312. Exemplify this in the use of *delectat* and *plăcet?*

Delectat, as a personal verb, governs the accusative; therefore, impersonally, we say *delectat me, te, illum*, etc., it delights *me, thee, him*, etc.; or I delight, thou delightest, he delights, etc. *Plăcet*, in the same way, governs the dative; therefore we say *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, etc., it pleases *me, thee, him*, etc., or I please, thou pleasest, he pleases, etc.

313. When intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice, how may they be applied to any person or number?

Intransitive verbs used impersonally in the passive voice may be applied to any person or number by placing *after them* the personal pronouns in the ablative case, governed by the prepositions *a* or *ab* (*ab* when the pronoun begins with a vowel).

314. Illustrate this use in *pugnātur.*

Pugnātur *a me*, it is fought *by me*, or I fight.
Pugnātur *a te*, it is fought *by thee*, or thou fightest.
Pugnātur *ab illo*, it is fought *by him*, or he fights.
Pugnātur *a nobis*, it is fought *by us*, or we fight.
Pugnātur *a vobis*, it is fought *by you*, or you fight.
Pugnātur *ab illis*, it is fought *by them*, or they fight.

And so on through the different tenses and moods: pugnabatur a nobis, *we fought*, ventum est ab illis, *they came*, or *have come.*

315. In what mood are impersonal verbs not used, and how is this mood supplied?

Impersonal verbs are not used in the imperative mood, but take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight.

316. How many strictly impersonal verbs do grammarians reckon, and to what conjugation do they belong?

Grammarians reckon only *ten* real impersonal verbs; they all belong to the second conjugation.

Enumerate the impersonal verbs, with their meaning.

Dĕcet,	decuit, etc.,	*it becomes*, etc.
Lĭbet,	libuit, etc.,	*it pleases*, etc.
Lĭcet,	licuit, *or* licĭtum est, etc.,	*it is allowed, lawful*, etc.
Miserĕret,	miserĕruit, *or* miserĭtum est, etc.,	*it pities*, etc.
Oportet,	oportuit, etc.	*it behooves*, etc.
Pĭget,	piguit, *or* pigĭtum est, etc.,	*it grieves*, etc.
Pœnĭtet,	pœnituit, etc.,	*it repents*, etc.
Pŭdet,	puduit, *or* pudĭtum est, etc.,	*it shames*, etc.
Tædet,	tæduit, *or* tædum est, etc.,	*it wearies*, etc.
Lĭquet,	(*no perfect*),	*it appears.*

317. What particular class of words is included under impersonals?

Verbs which indicate the state of the weather, or express the operations of nature, are included under impersonals; as, pluit, *it rains;* ningit, *it snows;* fulmĭnat, *it lightens;* tŏnat, *it thunders*, etc.

ADVERBS.

318. What is an adverb?

An ADVERB is a word used to modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; as, *bĕne* dixit, he spoke *well; egrēgie* fidēlis, *remarkably* faithful; *valde bĕne, very well.*

319. What are the principal classes into which adverbs may be divided?

Adverbs may be divided principally into adverbs of *time, place, manner, quantity,* and *motion.*

320. Mention some adverbs of time.

ADVERBS OF TIME: *nunc,* now; *nŭper,* lately; *ōlim,* formerly; *semper,* always; *nunquam,* never; etc.

321. Mention some adverbs of place.

ADVERBS OF PLACE: *hic,* here; *ŭbi,* where; *illic,* there; *fŏris,* abroad; etc.

322. Mention some adverbs of manner.

ADVERBS OF MANNER: *bĕne,* well; *mălе,* ill; *ĭta, sic,* so; *grātis,* freely; etc.

323. Mention some adverbs of quantity.

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY: *multum,* much; *părum,* little; *pĕne,* almost; etc.

324. Mention some adverbs of motion.

ADVERBS OF MOTION: *eo,* thither; *inde,* thence; *quo,* whither; *illuc,* thither; etc.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

325. How are adverbs derived?

Adverbs are derived principally from adjectives, nouns, or participles.

326. What terminations do adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions take?

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions in *us*, change *us* into *e* or *ter*; as, altus, *alte*; dūrus, *dūre* or *durĭter*. Adverbs from *er* either change *er* into *re* or add *e*; as, æger, *ægre*; lĭber, *lĭbĕre*; mĭser, *misĕre*. Some from *us* take *ĭter* and *ĭtus*; as, humānus, *humanĭter* or *humanĭtus*.

327. What generally is the termination of adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension?

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension add *ĭter* to the root; as, acris, *acrĭter*; fēlix, *felicĭter*; turpis, *turpĭter*.

328. In what do adverbs derived from nouns generally end?

Adverbs derived from nouns generally end in *tim* or *ĭtus*; as, *grex*, a herd, *gregātim*, in herds; *vir*, a man, *virītim*, man by man; *radix*, a root, *radicĭtus*, by the roots.

329. What are the terminations of adverbs derived from participles?

Adverbs derived from participles end either in *te*, *ter*, or *tim*; as, doctus, *docte*; ămans, *amanter*; raptus, *raptim*.

330. What cases of nouns, adjectives, and participles are sometimes used as adverbs?

The ablative singular of nouns, adjectives, and participles, and the accusative singular (by the poets, plural) neuter of adjectives, are sometimes used as adverbs; as, *mŏdo*, *vulgo*; *cĭto*, *falso*; *auspicāto*, *consulto*; *sōlum*, *sublīme*; *multa*, *tristia*.

331. How do you explain such adverbial forms as *quâ*, *aliâ*, *rectâ*, *unâ*?

Quâ, *aliâ*, *rectâ*, *unâ*, and the like, are adjectives in the ablative singular feminine, with the noun *viâ* understood; as, *quâ viâ*, by which way; *aliâ viâ*, by another way; *rectâ viâ*, straight forward; *unâ viâ*, together.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

332. How are adverbs compared?

Adverbs are compared generally like the adjectives from which they are derived; the regular *comparative* ending in *ius*, and the *superlative* in *issime* or *errime*.

333. Compare the following adverbs.

Alte (*highly*),	altius,	altissĭme.
Fortĭter (*bravely*),	fortius,	fortissĭme.
Tūto (*safely*),	tutius,	tutissĭme.
Acrĭter (*sharply*),	acrius,	acerrĭme.
Lĭbĕre (*freely*),	liberius,	liberrime.

Compare the following irregular adverbs.

Bĕne (*well*),	melius,	optĭme.
Mălе (*badly*),	pejus,	pessĭme.
Facĭle (*easily*),	facilius,	facillĭme.
Multum (*much*),	plus,	plurĭmum.
Părum (*little*),	mĭnus,	minĭme, *or* minĭmum.
Prŏpe (*near*),	propius,	proxĭme.

DEFECTIVE ADVERBS.

———	Măgis (*more*),	maxĭme.
———	Ocius (*more swiftly*),	ocissĭme.
———	Prius (*sooner*),	prīmo, *or* prīmum.
Merĭto (*deservedly*),	———	meritissĭme.
Novĭter (*newly*),	———	novissĭme.
Nūper (*lately*),	———	nuperrĭme.
Sătis (*enough*),	satius.	———

Compare DIU and SÆPE.

Diu (*long*),	diutius,	diutissĭme.
Sæpe (*often*),	sæpius,	sæpissĭme.

PREPOSITIONS.

334. What is a preposition?

A PREPOSITION is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence.

335. Why is a preposition so called, and from what is the word derived?

A preposition is so called because it is *placed before* the word which it governs. It is derived from *præ*, before, and *positus*, placed.

NOTE.—The poets sometimes place the prepositions after the case they govern.

336. What cases do prepositions govern?

Twenty-eight prepositions govern the accusative case, and *fifteen* govern the ablative.

337. Repeat (1) from *ad* to *cis;* (2) from *cis* to *juxta;* (3) from *juxta* to *ultra*, the

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

(1) Ad, *to, at, toward.*
Apud, *at, near, with.*
Ante, *before* (of time and place).
Adversus, Adversum, } *against, toward.*
Circa, Circum, } *around, about.*
Circĭter, *about* (of time).
(2) Cis, Citra, } *on this side, within.*
Contra, *against, opposite.*
Erga, *toward.*
Extra, *without, beyond.*
Infra, *beneath.*
Inter, *between, among, during.*
Intra, *within.*
(3) Juxta, *near, beside.*
Ob, *for, on account of.*
Pĕnes, *in the power of.*
Per, *through, during, by.*
Pōne, *behind.*
Post, *behind, after, since.*
Præter, *besides, except.*
Propter, *near, on account of.*
Secundum, *along, according to.*
Supra, *above.*
Trans, *beyond, across, over.*
Ultra, *beyond.*

338. Repeat the

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE ABLATIVE CASE.

A, Ab, Abs, } *from, by, after.*
Absque, *without.*
Clam, *without the knowledge of.*
Cōram, *before, in presence of.*
Cum, *with.*
De, *concerning, of, over.*
E, Ex, } *out of, from, after, by.*
Pălam, { *before, with the knowledge of.*
Præ, *before, in comparison with.*
Pro, *before, for, according to.*
Sĭne, *without.*
Tĕnus, *as far as, up to.*

339. What is the difference in the use of *a, ab,* and *abs?*

A is used before *consonants; ab* before *vowels* and *h, f, r,* and sometimes *t; abs* before *t* and *q.*

340. What is the difference in the use of *e* and *ex?*

Ex is used before vowels; *e* or *ex* before consonants.

341. What prepositions govern sometimes the *accusative,* and sometimes the *ablative?*

The prepositions *in, sub, super,* and *subter* govern the *accusative* when motion *to a place* is signified; but when motion or rest *in a place* is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the *ablative, super* and *subter* either the *accusative* or *ablative.*

342. What is to be remarked with regard to *tĕnus* and *clam?*

Tĕnus is always put after its case, and sometimes governs a genitive; as, *crūrum tĕnus,* up to the legs. *Clam* sometimes governs an accusative as well as an ablative; as, *clam patre* or *patrem,* unknown to his father.

343. When are prepositions used as adverbs?

Prepositions are used as adverbs when they are not followed by their case.

INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

344. What are inseparable prepositions, and why are they so called?

The syllables *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con,* are called *inseparable prepositions,* because they are never found except in compound words.

345. What are the significations of these prepositions?

AM signifies *round*, or *about*; as, ambio, *to surround.*
DI *or* DIS, *asunder*, or *apart*; as, divello, *to pull asunder.*
RE, *back*, or *again*; as, relĕgo, *to read again.*
SE, *apart*, or *aside*; as, sepōno, *to lay aside.*
CON, *together*; as, concresco, *to grow together.*

346. Which two sometimes reverse the meaning of a word?

Di or *dis*, and *re*, sometimes reverse the meaning of a word; as, facĭlis, *easy*; difficĭlis, *difficult*; claudo, *I shut*; reclūdo, *I open.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

347. What is a conjunction?

A CONJUNCTION is a word used to connect words or sentences.

348. What are some of the principal classes into which conjunctions may be divided?

Conjunctions, according to their different significations, may be divided into the following principal classes, namely:

1. COPULATIVES; as, *ac, atque, et, que, etiam, quŏque.*
2. DISJUNCTIVES; as, *aut, vel, seu, sĭve, ve, nēve, neu.*
3. CONCESSIVES; as, *etsi, etiamsi, licet, quanquam.*
4. ADVERSATIVES; as, *at, atqui, autem, sed, vērum.*
5. CAUSALS; as, *enim, etĕnim, nam, quando, quia.*
6. ILLATIVES; as, *ergo, idcirco, igĭtur, quāre.*
7. FINALS; as, *ne, quin, quo, quomĭnus, ut, ūti.*
8. CONDITIONALS; as, *si, sin, nĭsi, dummŏdo.*
9. SUSPENSIVES; as, *an, anne, annon, ne, necne, num, utrum.*

349. What is the difference between a copulative and a disjunctive conjunction?

A *copulative* conjunction connects things that may be considered *jointly*; a *disjunctive*, such as are to be considered *separately.*

350. What is the relation of concessives and adversatives to each other?

Concessive and *adversative* conjunctions are *opposed* to each other; the former *concede* or *grant* something as true; the latter *oppose* or *object* to it as such.

351. What does an illative conjunction express?

An *illative* conjunction expresses an *inference* that something is true, or ought to be done or said.

352. What do final conjunctions denote?

Final conjunctions denote the *end*, *purpose*, or *object* for which something is done or said.

353. What conjunctions are called enclitics, and why?

The conjunctions *que*, *ve* (and the interrogative particle *ne*), *which are always annexed to a word*, are called *enclitics*, because when placed after *a long syllable* they incline the accent to that syllable; as, *vī'rum, virum'que; am'bo, ambo've; pū'tas, putas'ne?*

INTERJECTIONS.

254. What is an interjection?

An INTERJECTION is a word used in exclamations, to express some emotion of the mind; as, *oh! hei! heu! oh! ha! alas!*

355. What parts of speech are sometimes used as interjections?

Nouns and adjectives in the neuter gender are sometimes used as interjections; as, *pax!* peace! be still! *mălum!* the mischief! *infandum!* shame!

SYNTAX.

356. What is syntax?

SYNTAX is that part of grammar which treats of the proper arrangement of words in a sentence.

SENTENCES.

357. What is a sentence, and what is it sometimes called?

A SENTENCE is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *hŏmo est mortālis*, man is mortal. A sentence is sometimes called a *proposition*.

358. How many kinds of sentences are there?

Sentences are either *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

359. What is a simple sentence?

A SIMPLE SENTENCE is one which contains only a single proposition; as, *vīta est brĕvis*, life is short.

360. What is a compound sentence?

A COMPOUND SENTENCE is one which contains two or more independent propositions; as, *vīta est brĕvis, et ars est longa*, life is short, and art is long.

361. What is a complex sentence?

A COMPLEX SENTENCE is one in which one (or more) of the propositions is dependent on another, which is called the leading sentence; as, *memoria minuĭtur, nĭsi eam exerceas*, the memory is weakened, if you do not exercise it.

362. Explain what you mean by an independent and what by a dependent proposition.

An *independent* proposition makes sense by itself; as, *Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper*, Phocion was perpetually poor.

A *dependent* proposition makes sense only in connection with the one on which it is dependent; as, Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, *cum ditissĭmus esse posset*, Phocion was perpetually poor, whereas he might have been very rich. Here *cum ditissĭmus esse posset* depends for its meaning on the preceding clause, as without it we could not tell who *might have been very rich.*

363. What are the principal parts of a sentence?

The principal parts of a sentence are the *subject* and the *predicate.*

364. What is the subject, and what the predicate?

The *subject* of a sentence is that of which something is *affirmed*, and the *predicate* is that which *is affirmed* of the subject; as, *puer lūdit*, the boy plays. Here *puer* is the *subject*, and *lūdit* the *predicate.*

365. What is a grammatical subject, and what a logical?

A *grammatical subject* is a single word, either a noun, or a pronoun, or an infinitive. A *logical subject* is the grammatical subject with the words which modify its meaning; as, *conscientia bĕne actæ vītæ est jucundissĭma*, the consciousness of a well-spent life is very delightful. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical subject, and *conscientia bĕne actæ vitæ* the logical.

366. What is a grammatical predicate, and what a logical?

A *grammatical predicate* is a single verb; a *logical predicate* is the verb together with the words which modify its meaning; as, *Viriāthus bellum contra Romānos excitāvit*, Viriathus excited a war against the Romans. Here *excitāvit* is the *grammatical predicate*, and *excitāvit bellum contra Romānos* the logical.

367. What is a compound subject?

A COMPOUND SUBJECT consists of two or more simple subjects belonging to the same predicate or verb; as, *lūna et stellæ fulgēbant*, the moon and stars were shining. Here *lūna et stellæ* is the *compound subject.*

368. What is a compound predicate?

A COMPOUND PREDICATE consists of two or more verbs having a single subject; as, *virtus laudātur et alget*, virtue is praised and starves. Here *laudātur et alget* is the *compound predicate.*

369. What further may be said of all subjects and predicates?

All subjects and predicates may be modified by other words, which are used to *explain, enlarge, restrict,* or otherwise *qualify* their meaning.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

370. State briefly the general principles of syntax.

1. Every sentence must have a subject (*nominative*) and a predicate (*verb*), expressed or understood.

2. Every nominative must have its own verb, and every finite verb its own nominative, expressed or understood.

3. Every oblique case must be governed by some word in the sentence, expressed or understood.

4. Every infinitive (1) must be governed by some verb; (2) have an accusative subject before it; (3) or be used as a noun, either by itself or with other words, as the subject or object of a verb.

5. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle must have some noun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees in gender, number, and case.

6. Every relative must have some noun, pronoun, or other word, expressed or understood, to which it refers.

GOVERNMENT OF THE OBLIQUE CASES.

371. How is the genitive case governed?

Every *genitive* must be governed by some noun, adjective, verb, or adverb, or be used to express the *place where* or *in which*, and sometimes *price.*

372. How is the dative case governed?

Every *dative* must be governed by some noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or interjection.

373. How is the accusative case governed?

Every *accusative* must be governed by some verb or preposition, or be put before an infinitive as its subject, or be used to express the *place whither* or *to which*, *time how long*, *measure*, or *distance*.

374. How is the vocative case governed?

Every *vocative* is governed by the interjections *O*, *heu*, or *proh*, or is used without an interjection to denote the person or thing addressed.

375. How is the ablative case governed?

Every *ablative* case is governed by a noun, adjective, verb, or preposition; is used after the comparative degree; as the case absolute; to express *time when* or *how long;* the *place by* or *through* which; *price* and *measure*.

CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

376. Into how many parts is syntax divided?

The parts of syntax are commonly reckoned two: *concord* or *agreement* and *government*.

377. What is concord?

CONCORD is the agreement of one word with another in *gender*, *number*, *case*, or *person*.

378. What is government?

GOVERNMENT is the power which one word has over another in determining its *mood*, *tense*, or *case*.

379. How many concords are there?

There are four concords or agreements; namely,

1. Of a substantive with a substantive.
2. Of an adjective with a substantive.
3. Of a relative with its antecedent.
4. Of a verb with its nominative or subject.

CONCORD.

A Substantive with a Substantive.

380. What is the rule for the agreement of one substantive with another?

Substantives denoting the same person or thing are put in the same case; as,

Cicĕro orātor,	Cicero the orator;
Urbs Athenæ,	the city Athens;
Nos consŭles,	we consuls;
Filius deliciæ matris,	a son the darling of his mother.

381. What is this agreement called, and what is its use?

The agreement of one noun with another in case is called *apposition*, and the *second noun* is used to *explain* or *describe the first.*

382. Does this rule require that the apposition nouns should agree in gender and number, as well as in case?

The rule for apposition only requires that the nouns should agree in case. In the example *urbs Athenæ*, *Athenæ* is plural, while *urbs* is singular; and in *filius deliciæ*, *deliciæ* is plural and feminine, while *filius* is singular and masculine.

383. When two or more nouns in the singular have another noun in apposition with them, in what number is the latter put?

When two or more nouns have another noun in apposition with them, the latter is put in the plural; as,

Cicĕro et Antonius consŭles,	Cicero and Anthony, the consuls;
Rōma et Carthāgo urbes,	the cities Rome and Carthage.

384. When the singular nouns are of different genders, what must be the gender of the apposition noun?

When the singular nouns are of different genders, the apposition noun is put in the masculine rather than the feminine, if both forms exist; as, *Ptolemæus et Cleopatra, reges* (not *reginas*), Ptolemy and Cleopatra, the king and queen (*lit.* rulers).

AGREEMENT OF AN ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

385. What is the rule for the agreement of an adjective with a substantive?

An adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

Bŏnus vir, a good man;	*Bŏni vĭri*, good men.
Casta femĭna, a chaste woman;	*Castæ femĭnæ*, chaste women.
Dulce pōmum, a sweet apple;	*Dulcia pōma*, sweet apples.

386. To what other classes of words does this rule apply?

Adjective pronouns and participles, like adjectives, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

387. When two or more nouns singular have an adjective belonging to them, in what number is the adjective put?

When two or more nouns have an adjective belonging to them, the adjective is put in the plural number; as, *Vir et puer terrĭti lūpo*, a man and a boy frightened by a wolf.

388. What is the rule when the nouns are of different genders?

When the nouns are of different genders, the adjective is put in the masculine in preference to the feminine, and in the feminine in preference to the neuter; as, *Păter et māter sunt mortui*, my father and mother are dead.

389. How if the nouns denote things without life?

If the nouns denote things without life, the adjective is generally put in the neuter plural; as, *Lăbor et voluptas sunt dissimilia natūrâ*, labor and pleasure are unlike in nature.

390. When an infinitive mood or part of a sentence is used as a noun, in what gender is the adjective put?

When an infinitive mood or part of a sentence is used as a noun, the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as,

Mentīri est turpe,	to lie is base;
Solem vidēre jucundum est,	to see the sun is pleasant.

Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent.

391. What is the rule for the agreement of a relative with its antecedent?

The relative *qui, quæ, quod,* agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

Ego qui scrībo, I who write;	*Nos qui scribĭmus,* we who write.
Tu qui lĕgis, thou who readest;	*Vos qui legĭtis,* you who read.
Vir qui loquitur, {the man who speaks;}	*Vĭri qui loquuntur,* {the men who speak.}
Puella quæ saltat, {the girl who dances;}	*Puellæ quæ saltant,* {the girls who dance.}
Anĭmal quod currit, {the animal which runs;}	*Animalia quæ currunt,* {the animals which run.}

392. When a relative has two (or more) nouns for its antecedent, what is the rule for its gender and number?

When a relative has two (or more) nouns for its antecedent, the relative is put in the *plural* number. If the genders are different, the masculine has the preference over the feminine, and the feminine over the neuter. If the nouns denote things without life, the relative is neuter.

393. When the antecedent is of different persons, what is the person of the relative?

When the antecedent is of different persons, the first person has the preference over the second, and the second over the third; as,

Ego et tu qui scribĭmus, you and I who are writing;
Tu et frāter qui ambulātis, you and your brother who are walking.

394. When a part of a sentence is the antecedent, in what gender is the relative put?

When a part of a sentence is the antecedent, the relative is put in the neuter gender; as, *Tu ămas virtūtem, quod valde laudo,* you love virtue, which I highly approve.

395. State here the general manner in which a relative is governed?

A relative is governed, just like a noun of the same case, by some word in its own member of the sentence; as,

Deus quem *colĭmus*, God whom we worship; (445)
Cujus *munĕre* vivĭmus, by whose gift we live; (404)
Cui nullus est *simĭlis*, to whom there is none like; (426)
A quo omnia reguntur, by whom all things are governed; (338.)

Agreement of the Verb and its Nominative.

396. What is the general rule for the agreement of a verb with its nominative?

A verb agrees with its nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lĕgo, I read; *Nos legĭmus*, we read.
Tu scrībis, thou writest; *Vos scribĭtis*, you write.
Preceptor dŏcet, {the master teaches;} *Preceptōres dŏcent*, {the masters teach.}

397. When two or more nouns singular form the nominative, in what number is the verb put?

When two or more nouns singular form the nominative to a verb, if they are *taken together*, the verb is put in the *plural*; but if *separately*, the verb is in the singular; as,

Căto et Socrătes sapientes ĕrant, Cato and Socrates were wise;
Si Socrătes aut Plăto dicĕret, if Socrates or Plato should say.

398. What is the rule for a verb in the case of a noun of multitude?

If a collective noun expresses many as *one whole*, the verb is in the *singular;* if as *individuals*, the verb is in the *plural;* as,

Popŭlus (whole) *me sibĭlat*, the people hiss me;
Pars (individuals) *epŭlis onĕrant mensas*, {part load the tables with food.}

399. When a noun in the nominative singular is connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, in what number is the verb put?

When a noun in the nominative singular is connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, the verb may be put

in the plural; as, *Rĕmo cum frātre Quirīnus jūra dăbunt*, Romulus with his brother Remus shall give laws.

400. What classes of verbs have a nominative both before and after them?

The substantive verb *sum*, neuter verbs of *motion*, and passive verbs of *naming*, *electing*, and *esteeming* or *reckoning*, have the same case after as before them; as,

Ego sum discipŭlus, I am a pupil;
Tu vocāris Joannes, you are named John;
Illa incēdit regina, she walks as a queen;
Numa creātus est rex, Numa was elected king;
Scio te esse discipŭlum, I know that you are a pupil.

401. What is the nominative after these verbs called?

The nominative after these verbs is called the *predicate nominative*, and may be either a noun, an adjective, or a participle.

402. What verbs have no nominative?

Impersonal verbs have no nominative.

403. Are the personal pronouns, as nominatives, generally expressed.

The personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, as nominatives, are seldom expressed unless they are emphatic, as the termination of the verb marks the person with sufficient distinctness.

GOVERNMENT OF THE GENITIVE CASE.

The Genitive governed by a Noun.

404. Repeat the rule for the government of a genitive by a noun.

One substantive governs another in the genitive, when the latter limits the signification of the former; as,

Amor gloriæ, the love (*of what?*) of glory;
Lex natūræ, the law (*of what?*) of nature.

405. In what two senses is the governed genitive used?

The governed genitive is used either in a *subjective* (active) or an *objective* (passive) sense.

406. Explain the meaning of this subjective or objective use.

The genitive is *subjective* when the action or feeling of the noun which it limits belongs to itself, and *objective* when it is the object of such action or feeling. Thus in *ămor Dei* the genitive is both subjective and objective, as *ămor Dei* may mean either God's love toward *us*, or our love toward *him*. But in *providentia Dei* the genitive can be subjective only, and in *tĭmor Dei* the genitive can be objective only, as in the former *providentia* can only be predicated of God, and in the latter *tĭmor* can only be predicated of us.

407. When the limiting noun has an adjective joined with it, in what one of two cases may it be put?

When the limiting or governed noun has an adjective of *praise*, *blame*, or *quality* joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative; the ablative is most common; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*, { a man of the highest wisdom;

Puer prŏbæ indŏlis, or *prŏbâ indŏle*, a boy of good disposition.

408. What is this genitive or ablative called?

This genitive or ablative, with its adjective, is called the *genitive* or *ablative* of *character* or *description*.

GENITIVE GOVERNED BY AN ADJECTIVE USED AS A SUBSTANTIVE.

409. What case does an adjective without a substantive govern?

An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive (*i. e.*, used substantively) governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, much money;
Quid rei est? what is the matter?

410. Does this rule apply to adjectives in the plural as well as in the singular?

Adjectives in the neuter plural, as in the singular, without a substantive, govern the genitive; mostly, however, in the plural, and with a partitive signification; as,

Opāca locōrum, dark places; *Amāra curārum*, bitter cares.

The Genitive governed by Adjectives.

411. What adjectives govern the genitive?

Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avĭdus gloriæ,	desirous of glory;
Ignārus fraudis,	ignorant of fraud;
Mĕmor beneficiōrum,	mindful of favors.

412. What is a verbal adjective?

A *verbal* adjective is one derived from a verb; as, *avĭdus* from *aveo*, I desire; *ignārus* from *ignōro*, I am ignorant of; *mĕmor* from *memĭni*, I remember.

413. Under this rule what verbals are included?

Under this rule are included verbals in AX, NS, and TUS. Also, adjectives signifying (1) *desire, disgust;* (2) *knowledge, ignorance;* (3) *memory, forgetfulness;* (4) *care, negligence;* (5) *fear, confidence;* (6) *guilt* and *innocence.*

414. What is the rule for partitives, comparatives, superlatives, etc.?

Partitives and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals govern the genitive plural; as,

Alĭquis philosophōrum,	some one of the philosophers;
Senior fratrum,	the elder of the brothers;
Doctissĭmus Romanōrum,	the most learned of the Romans;
Quis nostrûm,	which of us;
Una musārum,	one of the muses;
Octāvus sapientum,	the eighth of the wise men.

415. What do you mean by a partitive, or a word placed partitively?

An adjective is *partitive*, or a word is used *partitively*, when either signifies a *part* and *not the whole* of any number of persons or things.

416. Do partitives ever govern a genitive singular?

Partitive superlatives govern a *collective* noun in the genitive singular, and take the gender of the individuals of which the partitive noun is composed; as,

Vir fortissĭmus nostræ civitātis, the bravest man of our state;
Maximus stirpis, the greatest of his race;
Ultĭmos orbis Britannos, the Britons, the most distant people of the world.

417. What is the rule for adjectives of plenty and want?

Adjectives of *plenty* or *want* govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plēnus iræ or *irâ*, full of anger;
Inops ratiōnis or *ratiōne*, void of reason.

418. Mention some adjectives which govern the genitive only.

The following are some of the adjectives which govern the genitive only: *benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *irrĭtus*, *liberālis*, *munifĭcus*, etc.

419. Mention some which govern the ablative only.

The following adjectives govern the ablative only: *beātus*, *mutĭlus*, *tumĭdus*, *turgĭdus*.

The Genitive governed by Verbs.

420. With what significations does *sum* govern the genitive?

Sum, when it signifies *property*, *characteristic*, or *duty*, governs the genitive of the person to whom the property, character, or duty pertains; as,

Hæc dŏmus est Cæsăris, this house belongs to Cæsar;
Hominis est errāre, it is characteristic of man to err;
Militum est suo dūci parēre, it is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.

421. What should be remembered in connection with this rule?

It will be useful to remember that whenever a genitive precedes (as it usually does) or follows any part of the verb *sum*, it is to be translated by one or other of the meanings in the examples.

422. What is the rule for *misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satăgo*?

Misereor, *miseresco*, and *satăgo* govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre civium tuōrum, pity your countrymen;
Satăgit rērum suārum, he is busy with his own affairs.

423. Mention some other verbs which, by a peculiar construction, govern the genitive.

1. Verbs denoting an affection of the mind are sometimes followed by a genitive; as,

Angor (or) *discrucior animi*, I am distressed in mind;
Lætor malōrum, I rejoice at their misfortunes.

2. A few verbs, especially among the poets, and by a Greek construction, govern the genitive; as,

Abstinēto irārum, cease from your anger;
Desĭne querelārum, cease from your complaints;
Regnāvit populōrum, he governed the nations.

424. What is the rule for *recordor*, *memĭni*, etc.?

Recordor, *memĭni*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative; as,

Recordor lectiōnis or *lectiōnem*, I remember the lesson;
Obliviscor injuriæ or *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

GOVERNMENT OF THE DATIVE CASE.

The Dative governed by Nouns.

425. Do substantives ever govern the dative?

A substantive frequently governs the dative when this dative is strongly its object; as,

Hostis virtutĭbus, an enemy to virtue;
Exitium pecŏri, a destruction to the flock;
Obedientia legĭbus, obedience to the laws.

A dative is also sometimes used for a genitive; as,

Vēnit ei (for *ejus*) *in mentem*, it came into his mind;
Cui (for *cujus*) *corpus porrigĭtur*, whose body extends.

The Dative governed by Adjectives.

426. What adjectives govern the dative?

Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit, ease* or *difficulty, likeness* or *unlikeness*, govern the dative; as,

Ūtĭlis bello, useful for war;
Terra facĭlis pecŏri, a land well adapted for cattle;
Simĭlis patri, like his father.

427. What other adjectives govern the dative?

Several adjectives compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bĭlis* and *dus*, govern the dative; as,

Conscius sĭbi recti, conscious to himself of right; (*gov. also gen.*)
Flebĭlis nulli, wept for by none;
Amandus or *amabĭlis omnĭbus*, worthy to be loved by all.

428. Which of these govern sometimes the genitive and sometimes the dative?

Affīnis, simĭlis, commūnis, par, proprius, finitĭmus, and some others, govern sometimes the genitive and sometimes the dative.

429. What case does *ĭdem*, the same, govern?

Idem, the same, in imitation of the Greek, governs the dative; as,

Jupĭter ĭdem (est) omnĭbus, Jupiter is the same to all.

The Dative governed by Verbs.

430. What universal rule is there for the government of the dative by verbs?

Any verb may govern the dative of the *object* or *end* for which any thing *is* or *is done;* as,

Fīnis vēnit imperio, an end has come to the empire;
Anĭmus rĕdit hostĭbus, courage returns to the enemy;
Tibi sĕris, tibi mĕtis, { you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

Special Rules.

431. What is the rule for *sum* and its compounds?

Sum and its compounds, except *possum*, govern the dative; as,

Præfuit exercitui, he commanded the army;
Debēmus omnĭbus prodesse, we ought to do good to all.

432. What is the rule for the possessor and the thing possessed?

Est is followed by a dative denoting the *possessor*, and the *thing possessed* is put in the nominative; as,

Est mĭhi lĭber, a book is to me, or I have a book;
Sunt mĭhi lĭbri, books are to me, or I have books;
Sunt regĭbus longæ mănus, kings have long hands.

433. What is the rule for verbs compounded with *sătis*, *bĕne*, *măle*?

Verbs compounded with *sătis*, *bĕne*, and *măle* govern the dative; as,

Benefacĕre reipublĭcæ, to benefit the state;
Legĭbus satisfēcit, he satisfied the laws;
Maledīcit utrīque, he abuses both.

434. What is the rule for verbs compounded with certain prepositions?

Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super*, govern the dative; as,

Pecŏri signum impressit, he put a mark upon the cattle;
Annue cœptis, favor our undertakings;
Hibernis Labiēnum præposuit, { he placed Labienus over the winter quarters.

435. Verbs with what particular significations govern the dative?

Verbs govern the dative which signify to *profit* or *hurt*; to *favor* or *assist*, and the contrary; to *command* and *obey*; to *serve* and *resist*; to *threaten* and *be angry*; to *trust* and *persuade*; as,

Fortūna făvet fortĭbus, fortune favors the brave;
Paruit legĭbus, he obeyed the laws;
Militĭbus persuasit, he persuaded his soldiers.

436. What four verbs are exceptions to this rule?

Jubeo, jŭvo, lædo, and *offendo* govern the accusative.

437. Mention some which vary their construction with a difference of signification, according as they govern a dative or accusative.

The following verbs govern a dative or accusative, with a difference of signification; namely,

Consulo *tĭbi,* I consult your interest; *te,* I ask your advice.
Æmulor *tĭbi,* I rival you; *te,* I imitate you.
Timeo *tĭbi,* I fear for your safety; *te,* I fear you.
Studeo *tĭbi,* I favor you. { *alĭcui,* I apply myself to something; *alĭquid,* I desire something.

438. Is motion *to a place* ever expressed by the dative?

Motion *to* or *toward* a place is expressed by *ad* with the accusative. Poets sometimes express it by the dative.

Impersonal Verbs.

439. What case do impersonal verbs govern?

Impersonal verbs govern the dative; as,

Expĕdit reipublĭcæ, it is profitable for the state;
Nōbis non lĭcet peccāre, it is not allowed us to sin.

440. What impersonal verbs form the first exception to this rule?

Rĕfert and *intĕrest* govern the genitive; as,

Rĕfert patris, it concerns my father;
Intĕrest omnium, it is the interest of all.

441. Is this construction followed with the personal pronouns?

Instead of the personal pronouns in the genitive, *rĕfert* and *intĕrest* take the possessives, *mea, tua, sua, nostra,* and *vestra,* in the ablative; as,

Non meâ rĕfert, it does not concern me;
Tuâ maxĭme intĕrest, it greatly concerns you.

442. What verbs form the second exception?

These five, *misĕret*, *pœnĭtet*, *pŭdet*, *tædet*, and *pĭget*, govern the accusative of the person exercising the feeling, with the genitive of the object on which the feeling is exercised; as,

Misĕret me (person) *tui* (object), I pity you;
Pœnĭtet me (person) *peccāti* (object), I repent of my sins;
Tædet me (person) *vitæ* (object), I am weary of my life;
Pŭdet me (person) *culpæ* (object), I am ashamed of my fault.

443. What verbs form the third exception?

These four, *Dĕcet*, *delectat*, *jŭvat*, *opōrtet*, govern the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as,

Non dĕcet te rixāri, it does not become you to scold;
Delectat me studēre, I delight to study;
Nĭhil in bello opōrtet contemni, nothing in war ought to be despised.

Verbs which govern Two Datives.

444. What verbs govern two datives?

The verbs *sum*, *do*, *dūco*, *verto*, *tribuo*, *habeo*, and some others, govern two datives, one of the *person to whom*, and the other of the *object* or *end for which*; as,

Est mĭhi voluptāti, it is (or it brings) a pleasure to me;
Hoc mīsit mihi munĕri, he sent this to me as a present;
Ducĭtur honōri tĭbi, it is reckoned an honor to you.

ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

445. What verbs govern the accusative case?

A transitive verb governs its object in the accusative case; as, *Ama Deum*, love God; *Reverēre parentes*, reverence your parents.

446. Do intransitive verbs ever govern an accusative case?

Some intransitive verbs govern an accusative case of kindred signification to their own; as,

Pugnāre pugnam, to fight a battle;
Canĕre cantum, to sing a song;
Currĕre cursum, to run a race.

GOVERNMENT OF THE VOCATIVE CASE.

447. How is the vocative governed?

The vocative is used to express the name of a person or thing addressed, or is governed by the interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, etc.; as,

Catilīnā!	Catiline, *or* O Catiline!
O formōse puer!	O handsome boy!
Heu me misĕrum!	ah, wretch that I am!

448. What do the interjections *en* and *ecce* govern?

En and *ecce* govern the nominative or accusative; as,

En ego vester Ascānius!	lo, I, your Ascanius!
Ecce duas āras!	behold two altars!
Ecce hŏmo, or *homĭnem!*	behold the man!

449. Does the vocative form any part of a proposition?

The vocative forms no part of a proposition; it serves only to show to whom the proposition is addressed.

GOVERNMENT OF THE ABLATIVE CASE.

The Ablative governed by Nouns.

450. What nouns govern the ablative?

Opus and *usus*, signifying *need*, govern the ablative; as,

Est opŭs pecuniâ, there is need of money;
Nunc ūsus virĭbus, now there is need of strength.

451. Do *opus* and *usus* ever govern any other case?

Opus and *usus* sometimes, but rarely, govern the genitive case; as, *Argenti ŏpus fuit*, there was need of money.

452. When *opus* is used as an adjective, what is the construction?

When *opus* is used as an indeclinable adjective it has no government, but agrees with its noun, like any other adjective; as, *Dux nōbis ŏpus est*, we need a leader or guide.

453. With what particular class of words are *opus* and *usus* often joined?

Opus and *usus* are often joined with the perfect participle, used substantively; as,

Opus maturāto,—consulto, there is need of haste,—consultation;
Usus facto, there is need of action.

Ablative governed by Adjectives.

454. What adjectives govern the ablative?

These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, prædĭtus, captus,* and *frētus;* also the participles *nātus, sătus, ortus,* and the like, denoting origin, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre, worthy of honor;
Contentus parvo, content with little;
Prædĭtus virtūte, endued with virtue;
Captus ocŭlis, injured in his eyes (blind);
Frētus virĭbus, trusting to his strength;
Ortus regĭbus, descended from kings.

455. Do any of these adjectives ever govern any other case?

Dignus and *indignus* sometimes govern the genitive; as,

Dignus memoriæ, worthy of memory;
Indignus avōrum, unworthy of his ancestors.

Ablative with the Comparative Degree.

456. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, what are the two constructions?

The comparative degree governs the ablative when the conjunction *quam* (than) is omitted; as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey;
Præstantior auro, more precious than gold;
Nihil est virtūte formosius, nothing is more beautiful than virtue.

But when *quam* is used, the second noun is in the same case as the first, being simply connected with it by *quam* as a conjunction; as,

Aurum gravius est quam argentum, gold is heavier than silver;

Lupi ferociōres sunt quam cānes, { wolves are more ferocious than dogs.

Ablative Absolute.

457. What is the case absolute in Latin?

A substantive with a participle whose case depends on no other word is put in the ablative absolute; as,

Sōle oriente, fugiunt tenĕbræ, { the sun rising, or when the sun rises, darkness flies away;

Opĕre peracto, ludēmus, { our work being finished, or when our work is finished, we will play.

458. State the idiomatic ablative absolute with the participle omitted.

The verb *sum* having no present participle by which to translate the word "*being,*" two nouns, or a noun and pronoun or adjective, are put in the ablative absolute with the participle omitted; as,

Natūrâ dūce, { nature *being* guide, or under the guidance of nature;

Me suasōre, I *being* adviser, or by my advice;

Invītâ Minervâ, { Minerva *being* unwilling, or in spite of Minerva.

459. In what particular case is this construction universal?

The omission of the participle is universal when the *time* and *name* of office are indicated; as,

Manlio consŭle, in the consulship of Manlius;

Marco Messāla et Marco Pisōne consulĭbus, { in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.

460. For what is the ablative absolute principally used?

The ablative absolute is principally used to mark the *time* or *circumstances* of an event or action. (See examples already given.)

Ablative of Price.

461. In what case is the price of a thing expressed?

The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Constĭtit talento, it cost a talent;

Vendĭdit hic auro patriam, this man sold his country for gold.

462. What adjectives form an exception to this rule?

The adjectives *tanti*, *quanti*, *plŭris*, and *minōris* are put in the genitive; as,

Quanti constitĭt, how much cost it?

Non vendo plŭris quam cætĕri, { I do not sell for more than others.

Measure or Distance.

463. How is measure or distance expressed?

Measure or *distance* is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Mūrus dĕcem pĕdes altus, a wall ten feet high;

Urbs distat triginta millia, or *triginta millĭbus passuum*, } the city is distant thirty miles;

Iter, or *itinĕre*, *unius diēi*, one day's journey.

464. How is excess or deficiency in measure expressed?

Excess or *deficiency* in measure is expressed in the ablative; as,

Sesquipĕde longior, taller by a foot and a half;

Nŏvem pedĭbus mĭnor, less by nine feet;

Quo difficilius, eo præclarius, { the more difficult, the more glorious;

Quanto doctior, tanto submissior, { the more learned, the more humble.

465. In comparisons of this sort, how are the correlatives *eo* and *quo*, *tanto* and *quanto*, to be translated?

In comparisons of this sort, the correlatives *eo* and *quo*, *tanto* and *quanto*, should be translated by "*the*" emphatic, as in the last two examples.

Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, &c.

466. What case is used to express cause, manner, means, etc.?

The *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument* of an action are put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Palleo mĕtu, I am pale for fear (cause);
Fecit suo mōre, he did it after his own way (manner);
Auro ostrōque decōri, adorned with gold and purple (means);
Cæsus est virgis, he was beaten with rods (instrument).

467. Is this rule universal?

Cause, *manner*, and *means* are sometimes expressed in the accusative and sometimes in the ablative, governed by prepositions; as,

Ob adulterium cæsi, slain on account of adultery;
Defessus de via, tired with the way.

468. When the agent is voluntary, or a person, what is the construction?

When the agent is *voluntary*, or a *person*, a preposition must be used; *ob*, *propter*, or *per* with the accusative, and *a* or *ab* with the ablative; as,

Per te liberātus sum, I have been liberated through you;
Propter vos decĭpi, to be deceived on your account;
Clodius a Milōne interfectus est, Clodius was killed by Milo.

Limiting Expressions,—Ablative—Accusative.

469. By what case are general statements restricted to some particular qualification or part?

General statements are limited to some particular qualification or part by the ablative, which is called the "*ablative of limitation*;" as,

Pietāte filius, a son (in what respect?) in affection;
Pedĭbus æger, diseased (in what part?) in his feet.

470. Is the part affected ever expressed by any other case?

The part affected is often (especially by the poets) put in the accusative, which is called the "*synecdochical accusative;*" as,

Nūdus membra, naked *as to* his limbs;

Os humerosque deo simĭlis, like a god *as to* his face and shoulders;

Sibĭla colla tumentem, swelling *as to* his hissing neck.

471. What other case of limitation should be added?

A noun or pronoun denoting a person or thing in regard to whom or which something is said or done is put in the accusative; as,

Nunc illos qui in urbe remansērunt, now *with regard to those* who have remained in the city;

Quod relĭquum est, *as to that* which remains.

472. In what is this construction to be particularly noticed?

This construction is to be particularly noticed in speeches in which reference is made to something previously said or done. *Quod,* in these cases, begins the sentence and is followed by a subjunctive, which is translated as a participle; as,

Quod suâ victoriâ tam insolenter gloriarentur, as to their boasting so insolently of their victory;

Quod improvīso unum pagum adortus esset, as to his having unexpectedly attacked one canton.

The Ablative governed by Verbs.

473. What kind of verbs govern the ablative?

Verbs of *plenty* and *scarceness* for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis, he abounds in riches;

Căret omni culpâ, he has no fault.

474. What two verbs of this class are an exception?

Egeo and *indigeo* sometimes govern the genitive; as,

Eget æris, he needs money;

Non tam artis indĭgent quam labōris, they do not need skill so much as industry.

475. What particular verbs govern the ablative?

Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and *vescor* govern the ablative; as,

Utĭtur fraude, he uses deceit;
Abutĭtur libris, he abuses books.

476. What other verbs besides these govern the ablative?

Gaudeo, creor, nascor, fīdo, vīvo, pasco, epŭlor, nĭtor, and some others govern the ablative; as,

Elephantes amnĭbus gaudent, elephants delight in rivers;
Silĭce non nāti sŭmus, we are not born of a stone;
Animum pictūra pascit ināni, { he feeds his mind on the empty picture.

477. What case does *potior* often govern?

Potior often governs the genitive; as,

Potīri urbis, to get possession of the city;
Potīri rērum, to possess the chief command.

But *potior, fungor,* and *vescor* also sometimes govern the accusative; as,

Potīri urbem; Officia fungi, to discharge duties;
Sacras lauros vescor, I will feed on sacred laurels.

VERBS WHICH GOVERN TWO CASES.

Accusative and Genitive.

478. What verbs govern the accusative and genitive?

Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting,* and *admonishing,* with the accusative of a person, govern the genitive of the *crime, punishment,* or subject of *admonition;* as,

Arguit me furti, he accuses me of theft;
Meipsum inertiæ condemno, I condemn myself of laziness;
Illum homicidii absolvunt, they acquit him of manslaughter;
Mŏnet me officii, he admonishes me of my duty.

479. Do any of these verbs vary their construction?

Instead of the genitive of *crime, punishment,* etc., some of these verbs take an accusative or ablative, with or without a preposition; as,

Accusāre de negligentiâ, to accuse of negligence;
Me peccāto solvo, I acquit myself of fault;
Damnatus ad pœnam, condemned to punishment;
Eos hoc moneo, I warn them of this.

480. What cases do verbs of valuing govern?

Verbs of *valuing,* together with the case which they usually govern, govern a genitive denoting the degree of estimation, such as *magni, parvi, nihĭli*; as,

Æstĭmo te magni, I value you much;
Mihi stĕtit plūris, it cost me more;
Est parvi,—tanti, it is of little value,—it is worth while.

481. Under this rule what particular genitives are to be reckoned?

Under this rule the genitives *assis, flocci, pĭli, hujus,* and some others are to be reckoned; as,

Flocci te non facio, I do not care a straw for you;
Non te hujus facio, { I do not care that (a snap of my fingers) for you;
Æqui bonĭque facio, I take this in good part.

Accusative and Dative.

482. What verbs govern the accusative and dative?

Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring,* and *taking away* govern the accusative of the person or thing compared, etc., and the dative of the person or thing to which it is compared, etc.; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homēro, I compare Virgil to Homer;
Suum cuique tribuito, give every man his own;
Narras fabŭlam surdo, you tell a story to a deaf man;
Eripuit me morti, he rescued me from death.

483. In relation to the verbs which govern the accusative and dative, what are these cases called?

The accusative, or *thing done* or *said*, is called the *direct object*, and the person *to whom* it is done or said is called the *remote* or *indirect object*.

Two Accusatives.

484. What verbs govern two accusatives?

Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, and *cēlo* (to conceal), govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing, etc.; as,

Rŏgo te nummos,	I ask you for money;
Posce deos veniam,	ask favor of the gods;
Docuit me grammatĭcam,	he taught me grammar;
Antigŏnus ĭter omnes cēlat,	Antigonus conceals his route from all.

485. Is this construction always followed?

Verbs of asking sometimes take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*, and verbs of teaching the ablative with *de;* as,

Veniam ab ipso orēmus,	let us beg favor of him;
Istud volēbam ex te percontāri,	I wished to inquire of you about that;
De ītinĕre hostium senātum edŏcet,	he informs the senate about the march of the enemy.

Accusative and Ablative.

486. What verbs govern the accusative and ablative?

Verbs of *binding, loading, filling, clothing, depriving,* and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as,

Onĕrat nāves auro,	he loads the ships with gold;
Patĕram mĕro implet,	she fills the goblet with wine;
Terra se gramĭne vestit,	the earth clothes itself with grass;
Impedimentis exuit hostem,	he stripped the enemy of their baggage.

487. Instead of the ablative, what case do verbs of filling sometimes take?

Verbs of filling (in imitation of the Greek) sometimes take a genitive; as,

Adolescentem suæ temeritātis implet, { he fills the youth with his own rashness.

Passive Verbs.

488. What is the construction of verbs in the passive which govern two cases in the active?

Verbs which govern two cases in the active voice retain the latter in the passive; as,

Accūsor furti, I am accused of theft; (478)

Virgilius comparātur Homēro, { Virgil is compared to Homer; (482)

Doceor grammatĭcam, I am taught grammar; (484)

Nāvis onerātur auro, the ship is loaded with gold. (486.)

489. In changing the construction from the active to the passive, which case becomes the subject of the sentence?

In changing the construction from the active to the passive, the direct object or accusative always becomes the subject or nominative, while the indirect remains unchanged, as in the examples just given.

490. With passive verbs, in what case is the agent or doer put?

Passive verbs, especially with the poets, take the *agent* or *doer* in the dative, instead of in the ablative with *a* or *ab;* as,

Vix audior ulli, { I am scarcely heard by any one;

Scribēris Vario, { you shall be described by Varius;

Nulla audīta mĭhi sorōrum, { none of your sisters have been heard of by me.

PLACE,—NAMES OF TOWNS.

491. In what case is the name of a town put to express place where or in which?

The name of a town denoting the place *where* or *in which* is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Rōmæ, he lived at Rome;
Mortuus est Milēti, he died at Miletus.

492. What is the exception to this rule?

If the name of the town *where* or *in which* is of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habĭtat Carthagĭne, he dwells at Carthage;
Studuit Athēnis, he studied at Athens.

493. How is near or at a town expressed?

At or *near a town* is expressed by *ad* or *ăpud* with the accusative; as,

Ad or *ăpud Trojam*, at *or* near Troy;
Ad or *ăpud Pharsālum*, at *or* near Pharsalia.

494. When the place *whither* or *to which* is denoted, in what case is the name of the town put?

The name of a town denoting the place *whither* or *to which* is put in the accusative; as,

Vēnit Rōmam, he came to Rome;
Profectus est Athēnas, he went to Athens.

495. In what case does the name of a town denote the place *whence* or *from which*, *by* or *through which?*

The name of a town *whence* or *from which*, *by* or *through which*, is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho, he departed from Corinth;
Laodiceâ ĭter faciēbat, he went through Laodicea.

496. What general remark is to be made in regard to the foregoing rules?

The names of towns expressing place in all of the foregoing cases are sometimes put after prepositions; as,

Where or *in which:* *In Roma, in Philippis,* in Rome, at Philippi.
Whither or *to which:* *In Ephĕsum abii,* I went to Ephesus.
By or *through:* *Per Thebas ĭter faciēbat,* he went through Thebes.

497. How are names of countries, provinces, etc., construed?

The names of *countries*, *provinces*, and other places, except large islands, are generally construed with prepositions; sometimes without; as,

Nātus in Italia, born in Italy;
Abiit in Latium, he is gone to Latium;
Vēnit Sardiniam, he came to Sardinia;
Rediit ex Italia, he has returned from Italy.

DOMUS AND *RUS.*

498. What is the construction of *dŏmus* and *rus?*

Dŏmus and *rus* are construed like names of towns; as,

Mănet dŏmi, he stays at home; (491)
Dŏmum revertĭtur, he returns home; (494)
Domo arcessītus sum, I am called from home; (495)
Vivit rūre or *rūri,* he lives in the country; (491, 492)
Abiit rus, he is gone to the country; (494)
Rediit rūre, he has returned from the country. (495.)

499. What three particular words come under this construction?

Hŭmi, *militiæ*, and *belli*, signifying place, are construed in the genitive like names of towns; as,

Dŏmi et militiæ (or *belli*), at home and abroad;
Jăcet hŭmi, he lies upon the ground.

TIME.

500. Repeat the rules for time when and time how long.

Time *when* is put in the ablative; as,

Vēnit hōrâ tertiâ, he came at the third hour;
Die quinto decessit, he died on the fifth day.

Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Mansit paucos dies, he stayed a few days;
Sex mensĭbus abfuit, he was absent six months.

501. What is the difference between the use of the accusative and ablative in this rule?

The accusative marks the *continuance* of time without *precision,* the ablative the *precise* period.

CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

502. What is the construction of adverbs?

Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs, to modify or limit their signification; as,

Bĕne scrībit, he writes well; *Fortĭter pugnans,* fighting bravely;
Sătis bĕne, well enough; *Egregie fidēlis,* remarkably faithful.

503. Do adverbs ever govern a case?

Some adverbs of *time, place,* and *quantity* govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diēi, the day before that day;
Ubīque gentium, every where;
Sătis est verbōrum, there is enough of words.

Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnĭum optĭme loquĭtur, he speaks best of all;
Convenienter natūræ, agreeably to nature;
Vēnit obviam ei, he came to meet him;
Proxĭme castris or *castra,* next the camp.

GOVERNMENT BY PREPOSITIONS.

504. What case do the prepositions *ad*, *ăpud*, *ante*, etc., govern? (516.)

The prepositions *ad*, *ăpud*, *ante*, etc., govern the accusative; as,

Ad patrem,	to the father;
Adversus hostes,	against the enemy;
Intra mūros,	within the walls.

505. What prepositions govern the ablative? (517.)

The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, etc., govern the ablative; as,

A patre,	from the father;
Ab illo tempŏre,	from that time;
Cum exercĭtu,	with the army.

506. What prepositions govern sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative?

The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter* govern the accusative when *motion to a place* is signified; but when *motion* or *rest in a place* is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative; as,

Vēnit in urbem,	he came into the city;
Sub jŭgum missus est,	he was sent under the yoke;
Jăcet in terrâ,	he lies upon the ground;
Bella sub mœnĭbus gerĕre,	to wage war under the walls.

507. Give some examples (1) in which the preposition is omitted before its case; (2) in which the case is omitted after the preposition.

Devenēre locos (sc. *ad*),	they came to the place;
Lŏco mōtus est, (sc. *e* or *de*),	he has been dislodged from his position;
Ventum erat ad Vestæ (sc. *ædem*),	we had come to the temple of Vesta.

508. What is the rule for prepositions in composition?

A preposition in composition often governs the same case as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus schōlam, or *Eāmus ad schōlam*, } let us go to school;

Exeāmus urbe, or *Eāmus ex urbe*, } let us go out of the city.

509. When only does this rule take place?

This rule takes place only when the preposition may be separated from the verb, and placed before its case without altering its sense, as in the examples just given.

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

Moods.

510. What is the principal difference in the use of the indicative and of the subjunctive moods?

The indicative mood is used principally in independent or leading propositions, and the subjunctive in dependent propositions or clauses.

511. Is the indicative mood never used in dependent clauses?

The indicative mood is used in dependent and conditional clauses, to denote what is supposed or admitted as a fact; as, *Si vāles, bĕne est*, if you are in good health, it is well.

512. Is the subjunctive ever used in independent propositions?

The subjunctive mood is used independently,

1. As a softened imperative; as, *Eāmus*, let us go; *Moriāmur*, let us die.

2. In doubtful questions; as, *Quis dubĭtet?* who can doubt? *Quid aliud facĕret?* what else could he do?

3. After some conditional clauses with *si, etsi, etiamsi*, etc.; as, *Si hic sis, alĭter sentias*, if you were here, you would think otherwise.

4. To express a wish, and after *utĭnam*; as, *Vellem*, I could wish; *Utĭnam sapĕres*, I wish you were wise.

Sequence of Tenses.

513. What is the rule for the sequence or connection of tenses?

The rule for the sequence or connection of tenses is that the verb in the dependent clause must be of the same class with the verb in the leading clause; that is, a *primary* must follow a *primary*, and a *secondary* a *secondary*. (238.)

514. Explain this rule more particularly, and illustrate by examples.

A *present*, *future*, or *perfect definite* (with *have*) in the *indicative*, must be followed by a *present* in the *subjunctive* if the action is incomplete, and by a *perfect* if the action is complete; as,

1. *Present*, *vĭdeo*
Perf. Def., *vīdi*
Future, *vidēbo* } *quid agas*, { I see
I have seen
I will see } what you are doing;

2. *Present*, *vĭdeo*
Perf. Indef., *vīdi*
Future, *vidēbo* } *quid ēgĕris*, { I see
I saw
I will see } what you have done.

An *imperfect*, *perfect definite* (without *have*), and *pluperfect* in the *indicative*, must be followed by an *imperfect* in the *subjunctive* if the action is incomplete, and by a *pluperfect* if it is complete; as,

1. *Imperfect*, *vĭdēbam*
Perf. Def., *vīdi*
Pluperfect, *vidĕram* } *quid agĕres*, { I saw
I saw
I had seen } what you were doing;

2. *Imperfect*, *vidēbam*
Perf. Def., *vīdi*
Pluperfect, *vidĕram* } *quid egisses*, { I saw
I saw
I had seen } what you had done.

515. Is this rule for the sequence of tenses invariable?

This rule for the sequence of tenses is not invariable, but is subject to considerable modifications arising from the *time* of the action which the verbs may be intended to express. An historical present, for example, though *present in form*, is *past in time*, and is, therefore, often followed by a past tense

in a dependent clause. These modifications are best learned by practice.

Subjunctive Mood after Conjunctions.

516. What conjunctions require the subjunctive mood?

The conjunctions *ut, quo,* and *ne,* denoting *purpose* or *result,* also *lĭcet, utĭnam, dum, dummŏdo,* etc., in dependent clauses, require the subjunctive mood; as,

Lĕgo ut discam, I read that I may learn;

Non ĭta ferreus sum ut non movear, I am not so hard-hearted as not to be moved;

Verĭtas lĭcet nullum defensōrem obtineat, though truth obtain no defender;

Utĭnam sapĕres, I wish you were wise.

517. When is *quo* used instead of *ut* to denote purpose?

Quo is used instead of *ut* to denote purpose when it is followed by a comparative; as,

Pontem fēcit quo facilius transīret, he made a bridge that he might cross the *more* easily;

Ager arātur quo meliores fētus edĕre possit, a field is plowed in order that it may produce *better* fruit.

518. When do *ut, cum,* and *dum* require the indicative?

Ut, cum, and *dum,* when they signify time merely, are followed by the indicative; as,

Ut hæc audivit, when he heard these things;

Cum te semper dilexi, since I have always loved you;

Dum ea Romani parant, whilst the Romans are making these preparations.

519. With what kind of verbs is *ut* with a subjunctive idiomatically used?

Ut with a subjunctive is used after impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows,* etc.; as,

Quī fit ut, etc.? how does it happen that, etc.?

Restat ut, etc., it remains that, etc.

Sequĭtur ut, etc., it follows that, etc.

520. What is the idiomatic use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of fearing?

After verbs of fearing, *ut* is used *negatively* and *ne affirmatively;* as,

Vereor ut / *Timeo ut* } I fear he will *not;* { *Vereor ne* / *Timeo ne* } I fear he *will.*

Subjunctive after the Relative.

521. When does the relative require the subjunctive?

The relative *qui, quæ, quod* requires the subjunctive when it refers to an *indefinite, negative,* or *interrogative* word; as,

Sunt qui dīcant, there are some who say;

Nēmo est qui haud intellĭgat, { there is no one who does not understand;

Quis est qui utilia fugiat? { who is there that shuns what is useful?

522. How is the relative used to express purpose, object, or design?

A relative with the subjunctive, in a dependent clause, is often used to express purpose, object, or design; as,

Mittunt legātos qui dīcant, they send ambassadors *to say.*

Equitātum præmittit qui videant, { he sends forward horsemen *to see.*

523. What adjectives with a relative are followed by the subjunctive?

The adjectives *dignus, indignus, aptus,* and *idoneus,* followed by a relative, take the subjunctive; as,

Dignus qui amētur, worthy to be loved;

Idoneus non est qui impĕtret, { he is not worthy to obtain his request.

Construction of the Imperative.

524. What is the construction of the imperative mood?

The imperative mood is chiefly used in the second person to command, exhort, or entreat; as,

Nosce teipsum, know thyself;

De me cogitāre desinĭte, cease to think of me.

525. For what is it chiefly used in the third person?

The third person of the imperative expresses only command, and is chiefly used in the enactment of laws; as,

Sălus populi suprēma lex esto, { let the safety of the people / be the supreme law.

526. What is the proper negative for the imperative?

The proper negative for the imperative is *ne* or *nēve* (not *non* or *nĕque*); as,

Tu ne cēde mălis, do not yield to misfortune;

Homĭnem mortuum in urbe ne sepelīto nēve urīto, { neither (thou shalt not) bury nor / burn a dead body in the city.

527. Instead of a simple imperative, what construction is sometimes used?

Instead of a simple imperative, sometimes *fac* and *cave* with a subjunctive, and *nōli* with an infinitive, are used; as,

Fac erudias, take care to instruct, *or* instruct;
Căve existĭmes, beware of thinking, *or* do not think;
Nōli timēre, do not fear.

Construction of the Infinitive.

528. What is the construction of the infinitive?

The infinitive mood in its general construction may be regarded as a verbal noun, and as such may be used as the subject or object of a sentence, or be governed by a noun, adjective, or preposition; as,

Mentīri est turpe, (subject) to lie is base;
Da mihi fallĕre, (object) grant me to deceive;
Tempus abīre, (noun) time to depart;
Audax omnia perpĕti, (adj.) resolute to endure all;
Nil præter plorāre, (prep.) nothing but to weep.

529. After what kind of verbs is the infinitive used with an accusative subject?

After verbs *declarandi et sentiendi*, that is, verbs of *saying*,

hearing, feeling, knowing, believing, thinking, etc., the infinitive has an accusative before it as its subject; as,

Dixit se intelligĕre, he said that he understood;
Crēdunt se neglĭgi, they believe themselves to be neglected.

530. How are the accusative and infinitive to be translated in these cases?

When the infinitive has an accusative subject before it, the accusative must be translated by the nominative with the word "*that*" before it, and the infinitive as a personal verb, as in the examples just given.

531. On what does the time of the infinitive depend in such constructions?

The *time* of an infinitive, that is, the English tense by which it is to be translated, depends on the tense of the leading verb, or verb that precedes it.

State and exemplify this more fully.

I. A *present infinitive,* after a present or future, is present; after a past, is a past imperfect; as,

Dīcit se scribĕre, he says that he writes, *or* is writing;
Dīcet se scribĕre, he will say that he writes, *or* is writing;
Dixit se scribĕre, he said that he wrote, *or* was writing.

II. A *perfect infinitive,* after a present or future, is perfect; after a past, is pluperfect; as,

Dīcit se scripsisse, he says that he wrote, *or* did write;
Dīcet se scripsisse, he will say that he wrote, *or* did write;
Dixit se scripsisse, he said that he had written.

III. A *future infinitive,* after a present or future, is future; after a past, is a past potential; as,

Dīcit se scriptūrum esse, he says that he will write;
Dīcet se scriptūrum esse, he will say that he will write;
Dixit se scriptūrum esse, he said that he would write.

IV. A *future perfect infinitive*, after a present, future, or past, is translated by "*would have;*" as,

Dīcit *Dīcet* *Dixit*	*se scriptūrum fuisse,*	he says that he he will say that he he said that he	would have written.

Historical Infinitive.

532. What is the historical infinitive, and how is it translated?

When a nominative is followed by an infinitive without an intervening verb the infinitive is called the *historical infinitive*, and is translated as if it were an imperfect indicative of the same verb, to which it is considered equivalent; as,

Romāni festināre, or Romāni festinābant;
Alius alium hortāri, or Alius alium hortābatur.

533. By what verb is this infinitive supposed to be governed?

The historical infinitive is governed by *cœpit* or *cœpērunt* understood, according as the nominative is singular or plural.

Oratio Directa and Oratio Obliqua.

534. Explain what is meant by the *oratio directa* and the *oratio oblīqua.*

When a writer or speaker expresses his own thoughts or those of another in the very words used, the construction is called the *oratio directa*, or direct address; but when he only reports the words as what the writer or speaker thought or said, the construction is changed into the accusatiae and infinitive, and is called the *oratio oblīqua*, or indirect address.

Thus, Cicero says (*oratio directa*), "*Cupio me esse clementem;*" "*Meam dŏmum firmiorĭbus præsidiis munīvi.*" A writer or speaker reporting these would say (*oratio oblīqua*), *Cicero dixit se cupere esse clementem; Cicero dixit se suam dŏmum firmiorĭbus præsidiis munivisse.* In like manner,

(Directa),	*Plăto in Italiam vēnit,*	Plato came into Italy;
(Oblīqua),	*Ferunt Platōnem in Italiam venisse,*	they say that Plato came into Italy;

(Directa), { *"Actum est de exercĭtu,"* / *clamāvit,* } he exclaimed, "It is all over with the army;"

(Oblīqua), { *Actum esse de exercĭtu,* / *clamāvit,* } he exclaimed that it was all over with the army.

Participles.

535. What is the construction of participles?

Participles, besides agreeing, like adjectives, with their nouns in gender, number, and case, govern the case of their own verb; as,

Animus se non videns, the mind not seeing itself;
Hŏmo fraude cărens, a man wanting guile. (473.)

Gerunds.

536. How is the gerund, in its different cases, governed?

(1) The gerund in *di*, of the genitive cases, is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, time of reading;
Cupĭdus discendi, desirous of learning.

(2) The gerund in *do*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utĭlis scribendo, paper useful for writing.

(3) The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *inter*, etc.; as,

Ad intelligendum, to understand;
Inter docendum, in time of teaching.

(4) The gerund in *do*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *in*, or is used without a preposition as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Pœna a peccando absterret, { punishment frightens from sinning;
Memoria excolendo augētur, { the memory is improved by exercising it;
Defessus sum ambulando, I am weary with walking.

537. Is the gerund ever used in a passive sense?

The gerund, in a few passages, is used in a passive sense; namely,

Spes restituendi, (*Nep.*) the hope of being restored;
Causa censendi, (*Cic.*) for the purpose of being enrolled;
Ad imperandum, (*Sall.*) to receive orders;
Urit videndo, (*Virg.*) she inflames by being seen.

Gerundives.

538. Instead of the gerund with the accusative, what other construction is considered more elegant?

Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into gerundives in *dus*, which agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case.

539. In changing the gerund into the gerundive, what rule must be observed?

In changing the gerund into the gerundive, the governed accusative must be put in the case of the gerund, and the gerundive made to agree with it in gender, number, and case; as,

Gerund, *Tempus petendi pācem*,
Gerundive, *Tempus petendæ pācis*, } time of seeking peace;

Gerund, *Ad petendum pācem*,
Gerundive, *Ad petendam pācem*, } to seeking peace;

Gerund, *A petendo pācem*,
Gerundive, *A petenda pāce*, } from seeking peace.

540. Can this construction be reversed?

This construction may be reversed by changing the gerundive into the gerund, which must be put in the case of the noun, and the noun itself in the accusative case; as,

Consilia urbis delendæ, *or* Consilia urbem delendi;
Ad defendendam Romam, *or* Ad defendendum Romam;
In diripiendis castris, *or* In diripiendo castra.

541. What is the idiomatic use of the gerundive with *est?*

The gerundive with *est* implies *necessity,* or that something *must* be done, and takes the agent or doer in the dative; as,

Legendum est mĭhi,	I must read;
Scribendum est tĭbi,	you must write;
Moriendum est omnĭbus,	all must die.

Supines.

542. What is the construction of the supine in *um?*

The supine in *um* is put after verbs of motion, to express the object of that motion; as,

Abiit deambulātum,	he has gone to walk;
Venērunt questum,	they came to complain.

543. Is the supine in *um* never put after any other verbs than those of motion?

The supine in *um* is sometimes put after other verbs than those of motion; as,

Dedit filiam nuptum, he gave his daughter to be married;
Revocātus defensum patrium, recalled to defend his country.

544. Do supines govern any case?

The supine in *um* governs the case of its own verb; as,

Spectātum ludos veniunt,	they come to see the games;
Non servītum matrĭbus ibo,	I shall not go to serve the dames. (435.)

545. What is the construction of the supine in *u?*

The supine in *u* is put after adjectives signifying *pleasure* or *pain, ease* or *difficulty, worthiness* or *unworthiness,* etc.; as,

Jucundum audītu,	pleasant to hear;
Facĭle dictu,	easy to say;
Honestum factu,	honorable to do.

546. Is the supine in *u* ever used after nouns?

The supine in *u* is used after the nouns *fas, nĕfas,* and *opus;* as,

Fas est dictu,	*Nĕfas est dictu,*	*Opus est dictu,*
it is right to say;	it is wrong to say;	it is necessary to say.

CONJUNCTIONS.

547. What is the construction of conjunctions?

The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, nĕque, aut, vel,* and some others, connect like cases of nouns and like moods and tenses of verbs; also clauses in the same construction; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem, honor your father and mother;
Nec lĕgit nec scrībit, he neither reads nor writes;
Concĭdunt venti, fugiuntque nūbes, the winds lull, and the clouds fly away.

548. Are the cases connected by conjunctions never unlike?

The cases connected by conjunctions are sometimes unlike, but the construction is the same; that is, the words so connected are in the some government; as,

Mea et reipublicæ interest, it concerns me and the republic;
Constĭtit asse et plūris, it cost a shilling and more.

549. How is this to be explained?

The first example is explained by reference to the rules 447, 448, and the second by rules 466, 467.

450. What is it useful to know with regard to conjunctions which go in pairs?

With regard to conjunctions which go in pairs, it is useful to know how they are to be translated. The following are some of the most common:

Et—et,
Et—que,
Que—que,
Cum—tum,
} both—and.

Aut—aut,
Vel—vel,
} either—or.

Sīve—sīve, either—or; whether—or.

Nec—nec,
Nec—neque,
Neque—neque,
} neither—nor.

Tum—tum, both—and; not only—but also; at one time—at another.

551. After what kind of words are *ac* and *atque* translated "as" and "than"?

After words expressing similarity or dissimilarity, *ac* and *atque* are translated "as" and "than"; as,

Facis ac si me rŏges, you do as if you should ask me;

Me cŏlet æque atque patronum suum, { he shows me as much attention as if I were his patron;

Si alĭter scrībo ac sentio, if I write otherwise than I think.

552. What is the general rule with regard to the mood to be used after conjunctions?

Conjunctions which do not imply doubt or contingency are followed by the indicative; those which imply doubt, contingency, or dependence, by the subjunctive.

PROSODY.

1. What is prosody?

PROSODY is that part of grammar which treats of the quantity of syllables and the laws of versification, or making of verses.

2. What is meant by the quantity of a syllable?

The quantity of a syllable means the time which is taken up in pronouncing it.

3. As to their length, how are syllables divided?

Syllables are either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

4. In regard to quantity, what is the difference between a *long* and a *short* syllable?

A *long* syllable takes twice as much time to pronounce it as a *short* syllable; thus, in *ămāre*, the second *a* is twice as long as the first. A long syllable, therefore, is equal two short ones, and two short ones are equal to one long.

5. What is meant by a syllable being *common*?

A syllable is said to be *common* which, in verse, is sometimes *long* and sometimes *short;* as *u* in *volucris*, which may be pronounced in poetry *volūcris* or *volŭcris*, as the metre requires.

6. How is the quantity of a syllable determined?

The quantity of a syllable is determined by certain rules, and when none of these applies to it, it is said to be *long* or *short* by *authority;* that is, the usage of the poets. Thus *i* in *lorīca* is *long*, and *e* in *rĕgo* is *short* by *authority*.

7. Is a final syllable ever long or short by authority?

A final syllable is *never long* or *short* by authority.

8. Into what two parts may the rules of prosody be divided?

The rules of prosody may be divided into *General Rules*, or rules which apply to all syllables, and *Special Rules*, or rules which apply to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

Short Syllables.

9. What is the general rule for short syllables?

A vowel before another vowel, in Latin words, is short; as, *mĕus*, *alĭus*, *nĭhil* (*h* being considered only as a breathing); in Greek words it is varied, though mostly long.

10. What are the exceptions to this rule?

Exc. 1. The first syllable is *long* in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and in the penult of *aulāi*, *terrāi*, *Pompēi*, and like words. The first syllable of *ohe* and *Diana* is *common*.

Exc. 2. *E* is *long* before *i* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension; as, *diēi*, *speciēi*.

Exc. 3. *I* is *long* in the tenses of *fīo* when not followed by *r*; as, *fīunt*, *fīebam*, *fīeri*, *fīerem*. *I* is common in genitives in *ius;* as, *illĭus* or *illīus:* but in *alterĭus* it is always short, in *alīus* (gen.) long.

Long Syllables.

11. What are the general rules for long syllables?

(1) A vowel before two single consonants, or one double consonant (*j*, *x*, *z*) is *long by position;* as, *ārma*, *fāllo*, *mājor*, *āxis*, *gāza*. But the compounds of *jugum* have *i* short before *j;* as, *bĭjŭgus*, *quadrĭjŭgus*.

12. What is the exception to this rule?

A vowel (naturally short and in the same syllable) before a mute when *l* or *r* follows is *common* in poetry, but in prose is *short;* as, *ācris* or *ăcris*, *pharĕtra* or *pharĕtra*.

(2) A *diphthong* is always *long;* as, *aūrum*, *Cæsar*. But *præ* in composition, when followed by a vowel, is short; as,

prĕire, prĕustus: also a diphthong in the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel is sometimes made *short;* as, *insulă Ionio,* etc.

13. What is to be remarked as to *u* followed by a vowel?

In prosody *u* followed by a vowel is not regarded as a diphthong; as, *quătio, quĕror, linguă.*

(3) The prepositions *a, e, de, se, di,* and monosyllables generally are *long.* But *di* is *short* in the compounds *dĭrimo* and *dĭsertus. Re* also in compounds is *short,* except in the impersonal verb *rĕfert.*

(4) A *contracted syllable* is always *long;* as, *cōgo* for *coago, nīl* for *nĭhil, nōlo* for *non volo, scīlicet* for *scīre lĭcet,* etc.

SPECIAL RULES.

First and Middle Syllables.

14. What is the rule for perfects and supines of two syllables, and what are the exceptions?

Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first *long;* as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci, vīsum, cāsum, mōtum.*

Exc. 1. The perfects *bĭbi, dĕdi, fĭdi* from *findo, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti,* and *tŭli.*

Exc. 2. The supines *cĭtum* from *cieo, dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum,* and *stătum.*

15. What is the rule for perfects which double the first syllable, and what are the exceptions?

Perfects which double the first syllable have *both short,* unless the latter be long by position; as, *cĕcĭdi* from *cădo, dĭdĭci, pĕpŭli, tĕtĕndi,* except *cĕcīdi* from *cœdo,* and *pepēdi.*

16. What is the rule for supines of more than two syllables, and what are the exceptions?

In supines of more than than two syllables *a, e, u* are *long* and *i* is *short* before *tum;* as, *amātum, delētum, indūtum, monĭtum.* But *i* is *long* in *divīsum,* also in supines in *ītum* from a perfect in *ivi;* as, *cupīvi, cupītum; audīvī, audītum.*

17. What is the rule for desiderative verbs in *urio?*

Desideratives in *urio* shorten *u* before *r*; as, *esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit:* but other verbs in *urio* lengthen it; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris.*

18. What is the rule for *u* in participles in *urus?*

PARTICIPLES in *urus* have *u long* in the penult; as, *amatūrus, monitūrus, doctūrus, auditūrus.*

19. What is the rule for *a, e, i, o, u* in the first part of a compound, and what are the exceptions?

In the first part of a compound *a* is *long*, *e, i, o*, and *u* are *short;* as, *mālo, trādo; nĕfas, nĕque; bĭmaris, omnĭpotens; hŏdie, sacrŏsanctus, dŭcenti, quadrŭpes.*

Exc. 1. *I* is *long* in words varied by cases; as, *qūīdam, quīvis:* or when the words can be taken separately; as, *ludīmagister, lucrīfacio.*

Exc. 2. *I* in the masculine of *īdem* is *long;* in the neuter, *short, ĭdem.*

Exc. 3. *I* is *long* in *ubīque, ibīdem;* doubtful in *ubīvis, ubīcunque.*

Exc. 4. *I* in the compounds of *dies* is *long;* as, *bīduum, merīdies:* but in *quotidies, quotidianus, i* is sometimes *short.* (*See* 67.)

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

20. When is a noun said to increase?

A noun is said to increase when it has a syllable or syllables more in any other case than in the nominative singular.

21. When is it said to increase in the plural?

A noun is said to increase in the plural when it has a syllable more than in the nominative plural.

22. What syllable or syllables are the increase?

The penult and antepenult syllables are the increase. The last syllable is never an increase. Thus in *rex, rēgis, re* in *rēgis* is the increase; in *ŭter, ŭtĭnĕris, tĭ* and *nĕ* are the increase; in *puer, puĕri, puĕrōrum, ō* is the plural increase.

FIRST DECLENSION.

23. What is the rule for the increase of the first declension?

The first declension has no increase in the singular. It increases only in the genitive plural, and in the dative and ablative plural of the few nouns which make *ābus;* in all these cases the *a* is *long;* as, *pennārum, deābus.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

24. What is the rule for the increase of the second declension?

The increase of the second declension is always *short;* as, *gĕner, gĕnĕri; vĭr, vĭri; sătur, sături.* Except *Iber* and its compounds; as, *Ibēri, Celtibēri.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

25. What is the rule for the increase of the third declension?

In the increase of the third declension, *a* and *o* are *long; e, i,* and *u, short:* as, *piĕtas, pietātis; hŏnor, honōris; mulier, muliĕris; lăpis, lapĭdis; murmur, murmŭris.*

EXCEPTIONS.

26. What are the exceptions in *A*?

The exceptions in *a* are masculines in *al* and *ar;* as, *Hannĭbal, Hannibălis; Cæsar, Cæsăris; vas, vădis; daps, dăpis;* and the increase of *mās, ănas, pār* and its compounds, *baccar, hēpar, jŭbar, lār, nectar,* and *săl:* Greek nouns which make the genitive in *ădis,* or which, ending in *ă,* make *ătis;* as, *lampas, lampădis; poēma, poemătis.*

27. What are the exceptions in *E*?

Hæres, locŭples, merces, quies, vēr, seps, lex, rex, vervex, hālec, plebs, mansues, lĕbes, increase *long.* Also Greek nouns in *er* and *es;* as, *crāter, cratēris; magnes, magnētis:* but *aer* and *aether* increase *short;* as, *ăĕris, aethĕris.*

28. What are the exceptions in *I*?

Dīs, glīs, līs, Quīris, Samnis; as, *Quīris, Quirītis:* nouns and adjectives in *ix* (including Greek nouns in *yx*), which make *īcis* in the genitive; as, *cervix, cervīcis; felix, felīcis;* also *vībex:*

Gryps and Greek nouns in *is* and *in*, which make *īnis* in the genitive; as, *Salămis, Salamīnis; delphin, delphīnis.*

29. What are the exceptions in *O*?

Neuters that make *oris* in the genitive; as, *corpus, corpŏris; marmor, marmŏris:* proper names; as, *Hector, Hectŏris:* words in *obs* and *ops;* as, *scrobs, scrŏbis; ĭnops, inŏpis.* Shorten also *arbor, mĕmor, compos, impos,* and *bōs. Ador* has *adōris* or *adŏris.* Gentile nouns generally increase *short;* as, *Macĕdo, Macedŏnis.*

30. What are the exceptions in *U*?

Nouns in *us* and *ur*, which make *uris, utis,* and *udis* in the genitive; as, *mūs, mūris; virtus, virtūtis; pălus, palūdis.* But *Ligus* makes *Ligŭris; pĕcus, pecŭdis;* and *intercus, intercŭtis. Fūr, lux, Pollux* have increase *long; furfur, murmur, sulphur, vultur, short.*

PLURAL INCREASE.

31. What is the rule for increase in the plural?

In the increase of the plural *a, e, o* are *long, i* and *u short;* as, *turbæ, turbārum; rēs, rērum; puĕri, puerōrum; mōres, morĭbus; lăcus, lacŭbus.*

INCREASE OF VERBS.

32. When is a verb said to increase?

A verb is said to increase when it has one or more syllables in any part of it than in the *second person singular* of the *present indicative active.*

33. What are the increase syllables?

The increase syllables are those preceding the last. The last is *never* an increase syllable.

34. May a verb have more than one increase syllable?

A verb in the active voice may have as many as *three* increase syllables; and in the passive *four:*

(*A-mas*), *a-ma-mus, a-ma-ba-mus, a-ma-ve-ra-mus.*

(*Au-dis*), *au-di-tur, au-dim-in-i, au-di-e-ba-tur, au-di-e-ba-min-i.*

35. What is the rule for the increase of verbs?

In the increase of verbs *a*, *e*, *o* are long, *i* and *u short*; as, *amāmus*, *docēmus*, *regĭmus*, *possŭmus*.

NOTE.—The same rule as for the plural increase of nouns.

EXCEPTIONS.

36. What are the exceptions in *A*?

A is *short* in the first increase of *do* and its compounds of the first conjugation; as, *dătis*, *dăbamus*, *circumdăre*.

37. What are the exceptions in *E*?

E before *r* in the third conjugation, and before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and in *beris* is *short*. But in *ērunt*, *ēre* of the perfect indicative active, *ēris*, *ēre* of the future indicative passive, and in *rēris*, *rēre* of the imperfect subjunctive passive, *e* is *long*.

NOTE.—*Erunt* of the perfect is sometimes shortened by the poets; as, *dedĕrunt*, *stetĕrunt*. (*See* 98.)

38. What are the exceptions in *O*?

There are no exceptions in *o*.

39. What are the exceptions in *I*?

I before *r* is *long;* also in the first increase of the fourth conjugation, except *ĭmus* of the perfect; as, *audīvi*, *audītus*, *audivĭmus*. *I* is also *long* in *sīmus*, *sītis*, *velīmus*, *velītis*, and their compounds. *I* in *rimus*, *ritis*, of the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is sometimes lengthened by the poets.

40. What are the exceptions in *U*?

For exceptions in *u*, see *Special Rules*, 17 *and* 18.

PENULT SYLLABLES.

41. What is the rule for the penult of patronymics?

Patronymics in *ides* and *ades* shorten the penult, unless they come from nouns in *eus;* as, *Priamĭdes*, *Atlantĭădes*; *Pelīdes*, *Tydīdes* (from *Peleus* and *Tydeus*). Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, *itis*, *ine*, and *one*, lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis*, *Chrysēis*, *Memphītis*, *Nerīne*, *Acrisiōne*. In *Thebăis*, *Phocăis*, the penult is *short*, in *Nereus* it is *common*.

42. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *acus, icus, idus, imus?*

Adjectives in *acus, icus, idus,* and *imus* for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptĭacus, rustĭcus, lepĭdus, legitĭmus.*

43. What adjectives are exceptions to this rule?

Except *opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, antīquus, postīcus, infīdus* (from *fīdo*; but *perfĭdus*—from *per* and *fīdes*), *bīmus, opīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus* and *matrīmus.*

44. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *alis, anus, arus,* etc.?

Adjectives in *alis, anus, arus, emus, ivus, orus,* and *osus* lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, ignārus, postrēmus, æstīvus, decōrus, arenōsus.* Except *barbărus* and *opipărus.*

45. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *ilis*?

Verbals in *ilis* shorten the penult, those derived from nouns lengthen it; as, *fertĭlis* (from *fĕro*), *agĭlis* (from *ăgo*), *civīlis* (from *cīvis*), *hostīlis* (from *hostis*).

46. What addition is to be made to this rule?

Exīlis, subtīlis, and the names of months, as *Aprīlis,* have the penult long; *humĭlis, parălis, simĭlis,* and all adjectives in *atilis,* as, *versatĭlis, volatĭlis,* short.

47. What is the rule for the penult of adjectives in *inus*?

Adjectives in *inus,* derived from inanimate things, as trees, plants, stones, and from adverbs of time, shorten the penult; as, *fagĭnus, crocĭnus, adamantĭnus, crastĭnus, diutĭnus.* Other adjectives lengthen it; as, *agnīnus, marīnus.*

48. What is the rule for diminutives?

Diminutives in *olus, ola, olum,* and *ulus, ula, ulum* shorten the penult; as, *urceŏlus, filiŏla, lectŭlus, corcŭlum.*

49. What is the rule for the penult of adverbs in *tim*?

Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim.* Except *affătim, perpĕtim, stătim.*

50. What is the rule for desideratives in *urio*?

Desideratives in *urio* shorten *u* before *r*; as, *esŭrio, esŭris,*

esŭrit: but other verbs in *urio* lengthen it; as, *ligūrio, ligūris, ligūrit; scatūrio, scatūris,* etc.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

51. What is the rule for *A* final, and exceptions?

A in the end of words declined by cases is *short;* as, *musă, templă.* Except the ablative of the first declension and Greek vocatives; as, *pennā, O Æneā.*

A in the end of words not declined by cases is *long;* as, *amā, frustrā, ergā.*

Exc. A is *short* in *ejă, ită, quiă,* and *pută* (adverb): in numerals in *ginta;* as, *trigintă:* in *contră* and *ultră,* when prepositions, *a* is *short;* when adverbs, *long:* in *postea* it is *common.*

52. What are the rules for *E* final, and exceptions?

E in the end of words is *short;* as, *nātĕ, sedīlĕ, regĕrĕ:* but in words of the first and fifth declensions and in Greek plurals *e* is *long;* as, *Anchisē, Calliopē, fidē, cetē, metē.*

Monosyllables in *e* are *long;* as, *mē, tē, sē.* But enclitics, *quĕ, nĕ, vĕ,* and syllabics, *ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ,* are *short.*

E in the second person singular of verbs of the second conjugation is *long;* as, *monē, docē:* but in *cave, vale,* and *vide* sometimes *short.*

E in adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declensions, and in superlatives, is *long;* as, *placidē, pulchrē, doctissimē, fortissimē:* but *benĕ, malĕ, magĕ, infernĕ,* and *supernĕ* are *short.*

53. What is the rule for *I* final, and exceptions?

I in the end of words is *long;* as, *dominī, patrī:* but in Greek datives and vocatives *short;* as, *Palladĭ, Tethyĭ, Alexĭ, Parĭ, Troasĭ* or *Troasĭn* (pl.).

In *mĭhi, tĭbi, sĭbi, ĭbi, ŭbi, nĭsi, quăsi, ŭti,* and *cui* as a dissyllable, *i* is varied; in *sicutĭ, sicubĭ,* and *necubĭ,* always *short.*

54. What is the rule for *O* final, and exceptions?

O in the end of words is *common;* as, *amŏ, virgŏ, quandŏ:* but in the dative and ablative of the second declension it is *long;* as, *dominō, librō.*

Exc. 1. In Greek nouns and in monosyllables *o* is *long;* as, *Didō, Athō, Ō, dō, stō.* Also in *quō* and *eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō, illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō, ergō.*

Exc. 2. *O* is *short* in *egŏ, sciŏ, cedŏ* (defective), *homŏ, citŏ, illicŏ, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ* and its compounds *quomodŏ, dummodŏ, postmodŏ.* But some of these have *o* common.

55. What is the rule for *U* and *Y* final?

U in the end of words is *long*; *y* is *short;* as, *vultū, molў.*

56. What is the rule for words ending in *B, D, L, R, T*?

Words ending in *b, d, l, r, t* make the foregoing vowel *short;* as, *ăb, illăd, consŭl, patĕr, capŭt.*

57. What are the exceptions to this rule?

Sāl, sōl, nīl are *long:* also *aēr* and *aethēr*, and nouns in *er* that make *ēris* in the genitive; as, *cratēr, cratēris; vēr, vēris. Fār, lār, nār, pār, cūr*, and *fūr* are *long.*

58. What is the rule for *M* in the end of words?

M with the foregoing vowel is cut off from the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel: otherwise the syllable is *short;* as, *militŭm octo* in prose, but *milit' octo* in poetry. (*See* 93.) Hence the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* in compounds are *short;* as, *cŏmedo, circŭmago.*

59. What is the rule for *C* and *N* in the end of words, and exceptions?

Vowels before *c* and *n* in the end of words are *long;* as, *āc, sīc, illūc, ēn, nōn. Nĕc, făc*, and *donĕc* are *short; hic* and *hoc* (not the ablative) are *common.* Shorten also *forsăn, forsităn, ĭn, tamĕn*, and *ĕn'* by apostrophe; as, *vidĕn'* (for *videsne*): and nouns in *en* which increase *short;* as, *carmĕn, carmĭnis.*

60. What is the rule for *AS*, *ES*, *OS* final?

As, *es*, *os* in the end of words are *long;* as, *pietās*, *quiēs*, *virōs*.

61. What are the exceptions in *AS*?

Anăs and Greek nouns in *as* which make *ădis* in the genitive have *as* short; as, *lampăs*, *lampădis*.

62. What are the exceptions in *ES*?

Final *es* is *short* in nouns which increase *short* in the genitive; as, *hospĕs*, *hospĭtis; limĕs*, *limĭtis: long* in *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *pēs* and its compounds. *Es* from *sum* is *short*, from *ēdo* (to eat) *long*. The preposition *penĕs* is *short*. *Es* is *short* in Greek neuters, and in the plural of Greek nouns of the third declension which do not make the genitive in *eos;* as, *cocoethĕs*, *Trŏcs*.

63. What are the exceptions in *OS*?

Os is *short* in *compŏs*, *impŏs*, and *ŏs* (a bone), and in Greek nouns of the second declension, and in the genitive of those which make the genitive in *os;* as, *chaŏs*, *epŏs*, *Palladŏs*.

64. What is the rule for *IS*, *US*, and *YS* final?

Is, *us*, and *ys* in the end of words are *short;* as, *turrĭs*, *bonŭs*, *Capўs*. But plural cases in *is* and *us* (except *bus*) are *long;* as, *bonīs*, *fructūs*; in *regibŭs* and the like *us* is *short*.

65. Mention some further exceptions in *IS* and *US*.

Exc. 1. *Is* is *long* in nouns which increase *long* in *inis*, *itis*, or *entis;* as, *Salamīs*, *Salamīnis; Samnīs*, *Samnītis; Simoīs*, *Simoēntis:* in the second person singular of verbs whose second person plural has the penult *long* in *itis;* as, *audīs*, *audītis; fīs*, *fītis; sīs*, *sītis:* in *glīs*, *vīs*, *gratīs*, *forīs*, *i* is *long*.

Exc. 2. Monosyllables in *us* are *long;* as, *mūs*, *grūs*, *rūs*. *Us* is also *long* in nouns which make the genitive in *ūris*, *ūtis*, *ūdis*, *untis*, or *ŏdis;* as *tellūs*, *-ūris; virtūs*, *-ūtis; incūs*, *-ūdis; tripūs*, *-ŏdis*. *Panthūs*, voc. *Panthū*.

DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

66. What is the rule for derivative and compound words?

Derivative words follow the quantity of their primitives, and *compound* words the quantity of the words of which they are compounded.

67. Are there many exceptions to the rule for derivative words?

The exceptions to the rule for derivative words are numerous; they are best learned as they occur.

68. What is the general rule for the vowels in the first part of a compound?

In the first part of a compound *a*, if not a preposition, is *long; e, i, o, u, y, short;* as, *mālo, quāpropter, trādo; nĕfas, valĕdico, hujuscĕmodi; omnĭpotens, trĭceps; hŏdie, quandŏquidem; dŭcenti, locŭples; Polўdorŭs, Eurўpylus.*

69. Give some exceptions to this rule?

E is *long* in *nēmo, nēquis, nēquando, nēquidquam,* and the like; also in *vēcors, vēsanus, vēneficus,* and compounds of *se* for *sex;* as, *sēdecim, sēmestris.*

I is *long* in words varied by cases, or when the compounding words can be taken separately; as, *quīvis, quīdam; ludīmagister, lucrīfacio. I* in the masculine of *īdem* is *long;* in the neuter *short, ĭdem;* it is also *long* in *ubīque, ibīdem,* but in *ubivis, ubicunque, doubtful.* In the compounds of *dies, i* is *long;* as, *bīduum, merīdies, prīdem;* but in *quotidie, quotidianus,* it is sometimes *short.*

U is *long* in *Jūpiter, jūdex, jūdicium,* and in compounds of *usus;* as, *usūcapio.*

70. What is the rule for *pro* in the first part of a compound?

The Greek *pro* is *short;* as, *prŏpheta, prŏlogus:* the Latin *pro* usually *long.*

71. Mention some words in which *pro* is short.

Pro is *short* in *prŏcella, prŏfanus, prŏfari, prŏficiscor, prŏfestus, prŏfecto, prŏfiteor, prŏfugus, prŏfundus, prŏnepos, prŏpero, prŏterrus.*

72. In what words is *pro* doubtful?

Pro is *doubtful* in *propāgo*, both noun and verb, in *propīno*, *profundo*, *procūro*, *propello*, *propulso*, and in *Proserpĭna*.

73. How is the quantity of the last syllable of every verse regarded?

The *last syllable* of every verse is regarded as *common*, or rather *long*, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice naturally made in passing to the next line.

VERSIFICATION.

74. What is verse?

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables succeeding each other according to some fixed rule, and forming what is called a line of poetry.

75. What is scanning?

SCANNING means the division of a verse into its proper feet.

76. What is a foot?

A FOOT is the measure of a verse: that is, a verse is divided into certain parts, each of which is called a foot.

77. Do verse and metre mean the same thing?

A *verse* is, strictly speaking, a line of poetry; its *metre*, or *measure*, is the number and kind of feet into which it is divided.

78. Is a single foot always a measure?

In *anapæstic*, *iambic*, and *trochaic* verse, a metre, or measure, consists of two feet; but in other kinds of verse a single foot constitutes a measure.

CÆSURAL PAUSE.

79. What is the cæsural pause?

The cæsural pause is a natural pause or break which we make in reading a line of poetry, as in the following:

Not a drum was heard, ‖ not a funeral note,
As his corse ‖ to the ramparts we hurried;
Not a soldier discharged ‖ his farewell shot
O'er the grave ‖ where our hero we buried.
We buried him darkly ‖ in the dead of night,
The sods ‖ with our bayonets turning,
By the struggling moonbeams' ‖ misty light,
And our lanterns ‖ dimly burning.

80. What is meant by cæsura in scanning?

Cæsura in scanning is when a syllable of a word is left after a foot is completed; as,

At domus | interi | *or* re | gali | splendida | luxu.
Sylves | *trem* tenu | *i* mu | *sam* medi | taris a | vena.

Here *or* in the first line, and *trem, i, sam* in the second, are cæsural syllables.

81. Is an attention to cæsura a matter of any importance?

The beauty and melody of a verse depend greatly on the cæsura: without it poetry differs but little from prose; as,

Romæ | mœnia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armis.

82. What is considered the *most beautiful* place for the cæsural pause, and what the *least?*

In hexameter verse the most beautiful place for the cæsural pause is at the first half of the third foot; as in the line

At domus | interi | *or* ‖ re | gali | splendida | luxu.

The least beautiful that which divides the line into two equal parts; as in

Exple | ri men | tem nequit ‖ ardes | citque tu | endo.

Heroic Hexameter.

83. Why is heroic hexameter so called?

Heroic hexameter is called *heroic* because it is the kind of verse employed to describe lofty actions, or the *actions of heroes;* and *hexameter* because it consists of *six* feet.

84. What are the feet employed in heroic verse?

The feet employed in heroic verse are the *dactyl,* consisting of one long and two short syllables; as, *dōmĭnŭs* (– ∪ ∪): and the *spondee,* consisting of two long syllables; as, *rēgēs* (– –).

85. What other feet, besides the spondee and dactyl, are used by Horace?

Besides the spondee and dactyl, Horace uses the

Iambus,	∪ –	Choriambus,	– ∪ ∪ –
Trochee,	– ∪	Epitrĭtus secundus,	– ∪ – –
Pyrrhic,	∪ ∪	Bacchīus (*ămāndō*),	∪ – –

86. Of what feet does hexameter consist?

In hexameter verse the *first four feet* may be either dactyls or spondees, the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, and the *sixth always* a spondee; as in the following scheme:

87. How is the foot in the fifth place sometimes varied?

A spondee is sometimes used in the *fifth* place, and the line is then called *spondaic;* as,

Cārā dĕ | ūm sŏbŏ | lēs māg | nūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē | mēntūm.

88. What is the greatest number of syllables, and what the least, that can be used in a line of hexameter?

The *greatest* number of syllables that can be used in a hexameter is *seventeen*, when all the feet, except the last, are dactyls; as,

Quādrŭpĕ | dāntĕ pŭ | trēm sŏnĭ | tū quătĭt | ūngŭlă | cāmpūm.

The *least* number is *thirteen*, when all the feet, except the fifth, are spondees; as,

Īntōn | sī crī | nēs lōn | gā cēr | vīcĕ flŭ | ēbānt.

Figures of Scanning.

89. What is meant by a figure in scanning?

By a figure in scanning is meant certain changes upon words, to adapt them to the verse in scanning.

90. What are the principal of these?

The *principal figures* in scanning are *synalœpha*, *ecthlipsis*, *synaphœa*, *synærĕsis*, *diærĕsis*, *systŏle*, and *diastŏle*.

Synalœpha.

91. What is synalœpha?

Synalœpha is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong in the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant;

which is scanned thus:

Cōntĭcŭ | ēr' ōm | nēs īn | tēntī | qu' ōră tĕ | nēbānt.

92. In what words does synalœpha seldom take place?

Synalœpha seldom takes place in the interjections *O*, *heu*, *pro*, *vœ*, *vah*, *hei*, and the like; as,

Hēu! ŭbĭ | pāctă fĭd | ēș ŭbĭ | qūæ jūr | ārĕ sŏ | lēbās.

ECTHLIPSIS.

93. What is ecthlipsis?

ECTHLIPSIS is the cutting off of *m* with the vowel before it in the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or a silent *h*; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum;

which is scanned,

Mōnstr' hōr | rēnd' īn | fōrm' īn | gēns cūi | lūmĕn ă | dēmptūm.

SYNAPHŒA.

94. What is synaphœa?

SYNAPHŒA is the application of synalœpha and ecthlipsis to the end of a line which seems to have a superfluous syllable. When this is the case, the line will be found to *end* either with a *vowel* or *m*, and the next line to *begin* with a *vowel*. In the first case synalœpha applies, and in the second ecthlipsis, and the two lines are read continuously; as,

Omnia Mercurio similis, vocemque colorem | que
Et flavos crines, *etc.* Scanned, *color' et*, *etc.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latino | rum
Ardua cernebant, *etc.* Scanned *Latinor' Ardua*, *etc.*

95. Are the three foregoing figures to be regarded in reading Latin verse?

The three foregoing figures are to be regarded only in scanning, not in reading, Latin verse.

SYNÆRESIS.

96. What is synæresis?

SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of two syllables into one; as, *eä* into *ā*, *eï* into *ī*, *eö* into *ō*, *iis* into *īs*, etc., as in the following lines:

Seu lenta fuerint alvearia (*alvāria*) vimine texta.
Centum aerii (*aerī*) claudunt vectes æternaque ferri.
Deturbat laxatque foros simul accipit alveo (*alvō*).
Connubiis (*connubīs*) arvisque novis operata juventus.

DIÆRESIS.

97. What is diæresis?

DIÆRESIS is the opposite of synæresis, and *divides* one syllable into two; as, *auræ* into *auraï*, *sylva* into *sylŭa*, *milvus* into *miluus*, *suadent* into *sŭādent*, etc., as in the following lines:

Æthereum sensum, atque auraï simplicis ignem.
Nunc mare, nunc siluæ. (*Hor.*)

SYSTOLE AND DIASTOLE.

98. What are systole and diastole?

SYSTOLE and DIASTOLE are the opposites of each other. The former *shortens* a syllable long by nature or by position; as, *ăbjicit* for *ābjicit*, *stetĕrunt* and *dedĕrunt* for *stetērunt* and *dedērunt*. The latter *lengthens* a short syllable; thus, *rĕ* short is lengthened by diastole in the following line, and elsewhere:

Rēligione patrum multos servata per annos.

By many systole and diastole are considered poetic licenses rather than figures of prosody.

99. What do you understand by the words *ictus*, *arsis*, *thesis?*

Ictus (stroke), which is the same as *arsis* (elevation), means that syllable of a foot on which a particular stress of voice is laid, and *thesis* (depression) that on which no stress is laid. The natural place for the *arsis* is on the long syllable of a foot. Hence in hexameter the *arsis* always falls on the first part of a foot, and by this a syllable naturally short is sometimes made long.

FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY.

100. What is a figure of etymology?

A *figure* of *etymology* is an unusual manner of writing a word.

101. Mention some of these figures.

PROSTHESIS is the *prefixing* of a letter or syllable to a word; as *gnatus* for *natus*.

APHÆRESIS is the *taking away* of a letter or syllable from a word; as *'st* for *est*.

Epenthesis is the *insertion* of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as *alituum* for *altum.*

Syncope is the *omission* of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as *dêum* for *deōrum.*

Paragoge is the *addition* of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as *claudier* for *claudi.*

Apocope is the *omission* of a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as *men'* for *mēne.*

Crassis is the *contraction* of two vowels into one; as *cōgo* for *coăgo.*

Antithesis is the *substitution* of one letter for another; as *olli* for *illi.*

Metathesis is the *changing* of the order of the letters in a word; as, *pistris* for *pristis.*

Figures of Syntax.

102. What is a figure of syntax?

A *figure of syntax* is a deviation in some particular from the ordinary construction.

103. What are the figures of syntax?

The figures of syntax are *ellipsis, pleonasm, enallăge,* and *hyperbăton.*

104. What is ellipsis?

Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words in a sentence, which the context readily suggests. The word or words omitted are then said to be *understood.*

105. What are the words most commonly omitted?

The words most commonly omitted or understood are:

1. The personal pronouns with verbs; as, *căno,* sc. ego; *moriāmur,* sc. nos.

2. The indefinite *homĭnes* with such verbs as *aiunt, fĕrunt, trādunt,* sc. homĭnes.

3. *Templum* or *Ædes* before the name of deities; as, *a Vestæ,* sc. *a* templo *Vestæ; ad Jŏvis,* sc. *ad* ædem *Jŏvis.*

4. *Tempŏre* in such expressions as *ex eo, ex illo,* sc. *ex eo* tempŏre, *ex illo* tempŏre.

5. *Filius, filia uxor;* as, *Faustus Sullæ,* sc. filius; *Cæcilia Metelli,* sc. filia.

6. *Dīcam;* as, *Quid multa? Quid plura? Ne plura,* sc. dicam; *Quid?* sc. censes *or* ais; *Quid tum,* sc. sequĭtur.

7. *Dent* or *vĕlint* in wishes; as, *Di meliora!* sc. dent *or* vĕlint.

8. *Aio, dico, inquit;* as, *hic ego,* sc. dīco *or* aio; *tum ille,* sc. inquit.

9. The verb *est* in the compound tenses; as, *amātus,* sc. est; *doctūrus,* sc. esse, *etc.*

10. *Existente* and *existentĭbŭs;* as, *te judĭce,* sc. existente; *Lepĭdo* et *Tullo consulĭbus,* sc. existentĭbus.

106. What further is comprehended under ellipsis?

Under ellipsis are comprehended:

1. Asyndeton, the *omission* of *conjunctions;* as, *vĕni, vīdi, vīci,* sc. et.

2. Zeugma, the *connection* of two nouns or two infinitives with a single verb which is applicable to only one of them; as, *pācem an bellum gĕrens,* where *gĕrens* is applicable only to *bellum,* and ăgens must be supplied to *pācem.*

3. Syllepsis, the *agreement* of an adjective or a verb with *one* of several nouns when it *belongs to all;* as, *sociis et rēge recepto; ille nĭger, tu candĭda esses.*

4. Synechdoche, the accusative of the part affected instead of the ablative; as, *os humeros*que deo simĭlis; explēri *mentem* nequit.

107. What is pleonasm?

Pleonasm, *superfluity,* is the use of more words than are necessary to express the meaning; as, *sic* ōre *locūta est.*

108. What is comprehended under pleonasm?

1. Polysyndeton, the use of unnecessary conjunctions; as, *ūna Eurusque Notusque ruunt.*

2. HENDIADYS (one-by-two), the connection of two nouns by *et*, when the latter serves the part of an adjective; as, *pocŭlum* et *aurum* (*aureum*), a gold cup.

3. PERIPHRASIS, a *roundabout* mode of expression; as, *tenĕri fœtus ovium* (*agni*), lambs.

109. What is enallăge?

ENALLAGE is a *change* or substitution of one word or part of speech for another.

110. What are included under enallăge?

1. *Antimeria*, the use of one part of speech for another; as, *nostrum vivĕre* for *nostra vīta; conjugium* for *conjux.*

2. *Heterōsis*, the use of one form of a noun, pronoun, or verb for another; as, *Romānus victor* for *Romāni victōres; sustulĕrat* for *sustulisset.*

3. *Antiptōsis*, the use of one case for another; as, *cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo* for *Iūlus.*

4. *Synĕsis* or *Synthĕsis*, a construction according to the sense of the words, grammar being disregarded; as, *pars* in *crŭcem* acti; *vox mea* qui clāmo.

5. *Anacolūthon*, in irregularity of construction, in which the last part of a sentence is not in harmony with the first.

111. What is hyperbăton?

HYPERBATON is a *transgression* of the usual order of words or clauses.

112. What are included under hyperbăton?

Hyperbăton includes:

1. *Anastrophe*, an *inversion* of the order of two words; as, *collo dăre brachia circum* for *circumdăre*, etc.; *nox ĕrit ūna sŭper* for *superĕrit.*

2. *Hystĕron protĕron* (the first last), a *reversion* of the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus; vălet atque vīvit.*

3. *Hypallăge*, an *interchange* of constructions; as, *dăre classĭbus Austris* for *dăre classes Austris.*

4. *Tmesis* (a cutting), separating the parts of a compound word; as, Septem *subjecta triōni gens* for Septemtriōni; *quæ me cunque vŏcant terræ* for quæcunque. (*See* No. 1, circumdare.)

113. What is an Archaism, and what a Hellenism?

1. An Archaism is an ancient form of construction; as, *opĕram abutĭtur* for opĕrā.

2. A Hellenism is a Greek construction; as, *abstinēto irārum* for īris.

Different Kinds of Metre.

114. Under what general heads may the different kinds of metre be classed?

The different kinds of Latin metre may be classed under Iambic, Trochaic, Dactylic, and Choriambic metres.

115. From what do these get their names?

Iambic, *Trochaic*, *Dactylic*, and *Choriambic* metres get their names from the *prevailing foot* used in each. These are also further distinguished by the *number of feet* used; also by some peculiarity either in the beginning or end of the verse; sometimes from the name of a poet who invented or used a particular species of verse.

116. Mention some of the terms used to mark these distinctions.

1. Verses are named from the number of metres they contain; as,

Monomĕter, consisting of *one* metre, or measure;
Dimĕter, consisting of *two* metres, or measures;
Trimĕter, consisting of *three* metres, or measures;
Tetramĕter, *four*; *Pentamĕter*, *five*; *Hexamĕter*, *six*; *Heptamĕter*, *seven*, etc.

2. From some peculiarity in their structure; as,

Acatalectic, when complete;
Catalectic, when a syllable is wanting at the end;
Brachycatalectic, when a foot is wanting at the end;
Hypercatalectic, when there is a superfluous syllable or foot;
Acephalous, when a syllable is wanting at the beginning.

3. From the name of some celebrated poet; as,

Alcaic, from Alcæus, of Lesbos;
Alcmanian, from Alcman or Alcmæon, of Sparta;
Archilochian, from Archilŏchus, of Paros;
Asclepiadic, from Asclepiădes, a Greek lyric poet;
Pherecratic, from Pherecrătes, of Athens;
Sapphic, from Sappho, a poetess of Lesbos;
Adonic, the verse employed by the Greeks in lamentations for Adonis.

117. In naming a verse, how many terms are necessary?

In naming a verse *three terms* are necessary;

1. The *species* or kind of verse; as, *iambic*, *dactylic*, *choriambic*, etc.
2. The *number* of metres; as, *dimĕter*, *trimĕter*, *tetramĕter*, etc.
3. The *ending* or *beginning;* as, *catalectic*, *acephalous*, etc.

NOTE.—1. When there is no irregularity (3) need not be named.
2. A well-known verse is often simply named; as, *Sapphic*, *Adonic*, *hexameter*, etc.

118. In what kinds of verse do *two* feet constitute a metre, or measure?

In *iambic*, *trochaic*, and *anapæstic* verses two feet constitute a metre; in the other kinds of verse a single foot is a metre.

119. Why has anapæstic verse not been included in the kinds of verse already enumerated? (114.)

No specimen of anapæstic verse has been found in the Latin writers of a purer age.

120. What is meant by *isochrŏnous* feet?

Isochrŏnous (equal-timed) *feet* are such as are capable of being divided into parts which are equal to each other in time. Thus a spondee is isochrŏnous with a dactyl or an anapæst (˘ ˘ –), and an iambus or a trochee with a tribrach (˘ ˘ ˘); but an iambus and a trochee are not isochrŏnous, because they can not be divided so as to have the corresponding parts equal in time; thus,

Isoch. { Spond., – \| – Spond., – \| – Iamb., ˘ \| – Troch., – \| ˘
Dactyl, – \| ˘ ˘ Anap., ˘ ˘ \| – Tribr., ˘ \| ˘ ˘ Tribr., ˘ ˘ \| ˘

Not isochrŏnous. { Iambus, ˘ \| –
Trochee, – \| ˘

121. What is the particular quality or use of these feet?

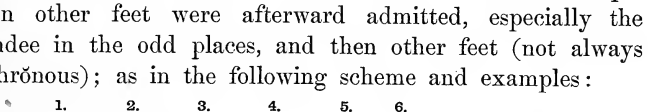
Isochrŏnous feet are interchangeable with each other; that is, one can take the place of another in certain kinds of verse—especially dactylic, iambic, and anapæstic.

122. Explain this use in iambic verse?

A pure iambic consists entirely of iambi; as,

Sŭīs | ĕt īp | să Rō | mă vīr | ĭbūs | rŭīt. (*Epod.* 16, *l.* 2.)

But in order to vary the rhythm and for ease in composition other feet were afterward admitted, especially the spondee in the odd places, and then other feet (not always isochrŏnous); as in the following scheme and examples:



Īnsūr | găt Aqŭĭ | lō quān | tŭs āl | tīs mōn | tĭbūs. { *Spond. in* 1, 3, 5; *trib. in* 2.

Cānĭdĭ | ă brĕvĭ | bŭs īm | plĭcā | tă vī | pĕrīs.—*Dact. in* 1; *trib.* in 2.

Pŏsĭtōs | quĕ vēr | nās dī | tĭs ēx | āmēn | dŏmūs. { *Anapæst in* 1; *spondee in* 3, 5.

Note.—For more examples, see the *Epodes of Horace.*

Metres of Horace.

123. How many kinds of metre does Horace use?

Horace uses *twenty* different kinds of metre, either separately or combined.

124. In what metre are his Satires and Epistles written?

The Satires and Epistles of Horace are written in dactylic hexameter. (117.)

125. Name by classes the nineteen other kinds of verse he uses.

The nineteen other kinds of verse Horace uses are,

Dactylic dimeter (Adonic), . . . (ii)* – ◡ ◡ | – –

Dactylic, greater (Alcaic), ... (ix) { – – | ◡ – | – | – ◡ ◡ – | ◡ –
◡ – | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡

Dactylic, lesser (Alcaic), ... (ix) – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ | – ◡

*Roman numerals refer to Metres of Horace.

Dactylic trimeter catalectic (Archilochian), ... (xiii) – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | –

Dactylic tetram., *a posteriore*, (vii) – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – –
– – | – – | –

Dactylic tetrameter, *a priore* (Alcmanian), ... (iv) – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑
– – | – – | – –

Choriambic dimeter, ... (viii) – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ – –

Choriambic trim. (Glyconic), (iii) – – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ –

Choriambic trim. catalectic (Pherecratian), ... (v) – – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | –

Choriambic tetram. (minor Asclepiadic), ... (i) – – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ –

Choriambic tetram., *altered*, (viii) – ⏑ – – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ – –

Choriambic pentam. (greater Asclepiadic), ... (x) – – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ –

Iambic dimeter acatalectic, . (xiv) ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ –

Iambic dimeter acephalous, . (xi) – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ –

Iambic dimeter hypercatal. (Archilochian), ... (ix) ⏑ – | – – | ⏑ – | – | –

Iambic trimeter acatalectic, (xiv) ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ –

Iambic trimeter catalectic, . . (iv) ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | –

Ionic, *a minore*, ... (xii) ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – –

Sapphic, ... (ii) – ⏑ | – – | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑

126. What is to be understood by *a posteriore* and *a priore* in dactylic measure?

A posteriore means the last four feet of a hexameter, and *a priore*, the first four feet.

127. Describe the metres of Horace more particularly, as they are used separately or combined, and exemplify them by verses.

Taking the Odes of Horace in the order in which we find them, we have,

I. Single lines: *Asclepiadic choriambic tetrameter;* consisting of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Mæcē | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē | gĭbūs.—(*Bk. I.* 1.)

Or, as the cæsural pause in this measure falls at the end of the first choriambus, it may be scanned as a dactylic pentameter, with a cæsural syllable after the first dactyl; as,

Mæcē | nās ătă | vīs | ēdĭtĕ | rēgĭbŭs.

The first method is the most approved.

II. Stanzas of four lines: the three first are *Sapphic*, consisting of five feet; a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, and two trochees: the fourth is *Adonic*, consisting of a dactyl and a spondee; as,

1. Jām să | tīs tēr | rīs nĭvĭs | ātquĕ | dīræ̆
2. Grāndĭ | nīs mī | sīt pătĕr, | ēt, rŭ | bēntĕ (*See* 52.)
3. Dēxtĕr | ā să | crās jăcŭ | lātŭs | ārcĕs,
4. Tērrŭĭt | ūrbĕm. (*Bk. I.* 2.)

III. Stanzas of two lines: the first, *Choriambic trimeter* or *Glyconic*, consisting of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; the second is *Asclepiadic choriambic* (I.); as,

1. Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cў̆prī,
2. Sīc frā | trēs Hĕllĕnǣ | lūcīdă sīd | ĕrā.—(*Bk. I.* 3.)

IV. Stanzas of two lines: the first is called Archilochian heptameter, and consists of a *Dactylic tetrameter a priore* (the first four feet of a dactylic hexameter, the fourth being always a dactyl) and three trochees. The second is *Iambic trimeter, catalectic*, consisting of six iambi (spondees being admitted into the odd feet, first and third, but not the fifth) and a catalectic syllable; as,

1. Sōlvĭtŭr | ācrīs hĭ | ēms grā | tā vĭcĕ | vērīs | ēt Fă | vōnī.
2. Trăhūnt | quĕ sīc | cās mā | chĭnǣ | cărī | nās.
7. Āltēr | nō tēr | rām quătĭ | ūnt pĕdĕ | dūm gră | vēs Cў̆ | clōpŭm.
8. Vūlcā | nŭs ār | dēns ūr | ĭt ōf | fĭcī | nās.—(*Bk. I.* 4.)

V. Stanzas of four lines: the two first are *Asclepiadic* (I.), the third is *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratian;* consisting of a spondee, two choriambi, and a catalectic syllable; the fourth is *Glyconic* (III.); as,

1. Quīs mūl | tă grăcĭlīs | tē pŭĕr īn | rŏsă
2. Pērfŭ | sūs lĭquĭdīs | ūrgĕt ŏdōr | ĭbūs
3. Grātō | Pў̆rrhă, sŭb ān | trō?
4. Cuī flă | vām rĕlĭgās | cŏmām.—(*Bk. I.* 5.)

VI. Stanzas of four lines: the three first are *Asclepiadic* (I.), the fourth is *Glyconic* (III.); as,

1. Scrībē | rīs Vărĭō | fōrtĭs ĕt hōs | tĭūm
2. Vĭctōr | Mæ̆ŏnĭī | cārmĭnĭs āl | ĭtē,
3. Quām rēm | cūnquĕ fĕrōx | nāvĭbŭs aūt | ĕquīs
4. Mīlēs, | tē dŭcĕ gēs | sĕrīt.—(*Bk. I.* 6.)

VII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.), the second *Dactylic tetrameter a posteriore*, that is, the last four feet of a Dactylic hexameter; as,

1. Laūdā | būnt ălī | ī clā | rām Rhŏdŏn | aūt Mĭtў̆ | lēnēn,
2. Aūt Ĕphĕ | sōn bĭmă | rīsvĕ Cŏ | rīnthī.
3. Īnsīg | nēs aūt | Thēssălă | Tēmpē.—(*Bk. I.* 7.)

VIII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Choriambic dimeter*, consisting of a choriambus and a bacchīus (⏑ – –); the second is *Choriambic tetrameter, altered*, the first foot being an *epitrītus secundus* (– ⏑ – –) instead of a choriambus; the last foot is a bacchīus; as,

1. Lў̆dĭă dīc, | pĕr ōmnēs
2. Tē dĕōs ō | rō, Sў̆bărīn | cūr prŏpĕrās | ămāndō.—(*Bk. I.* 8.)

IX. Stanzas of four lines: the first two are *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, consisting of a spondee or an iambus, an iambus, a cæsural syllable, a choriambus, and an iambus, or the last two feet may be dactyls; the third line is *Iambic dimeter hypercatalectic*, or Archilochian, consisting of an iambus or spondee, an iambus, a spondee, an iambus, and an additional syllable; the fourth is *Lesser Dactylic Alcaic*, and consists of two dactyls and two trochees; as,

1. Vĭdēs | ūt ālˈ | tā | stēt nĭvĕ cān | dĭdūm, *or*
2. Sōrăc | tē nēc | jām | sūstĭnĕ | ānt ŏnŭs
3. Sīlvæ | lăbō | rāntēs | gĕlū | qūe,
4. Flūmĭnă | cōnstĭtĕ | rīnt ă | cūtō.—(*Bk. I.* 9.)

Note.—This is Horace's favorite stanza, and is therefore called the Horatian Stanza.

X. Single lines: *Choriambic pentameter*, or Greater Asclepiad, consisting of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quæsĭĕrīs | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ quēm | tĭbī.—(*Bk. I.* 11.)

XI. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Iambic dimeter acephalous*, consisting of a long syllable and three iambi; the second is *Iambic trimeter catalectic* (IV.); as,

1. Nōn | ĕbūr | nĕquˈ aū | rĕūm
2. Mĕā | rĕnī | dĕt īn | dŏmō | lăcū | nār.—(*Bk. II.* 18.)

XII. Single lines: *Ionic a minore*, consisting of four feet of that measure (⏑ ⏑ – –), (*see* 125); as,

Mĭsĕrār' ēst | nĕqu' ămōrī | dărĕ lūdūm | nĕquĕ dūlcī.—(*Bk. III.* 12.)

XIII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second *Dactylic trimeter catalectic*, consisting of two dactyls and a catalectic syllable; as,

1. Dīffŭ | gĕrĕ nĭ | vēs rĕdĕ | ūnt jām | grāmĭnă | cāmpīs.
2. Ārbŏrī | būsquĕ cō | mæ.—(*Bk. IV.* 7.)

XIV. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Iambic trimeter* (Senarius), consisting of six iambi, but admitting a spondee in the odd places, or a foot equivalent to an iambus or a spondee in any place but the last; the second is *Iambic dimeter*, consisting of four iambi, and subject to the same law of substitution; as,

Ĭbīs | Lĭbūr | nīs īn | tĕr āl | tă nāv | ĭūm.
Ămī | cĕ prō | pūgnāc | ŭlā.—(*Epod.* 1.)

XV. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Iambic trimeter* (XIV.); the second is sometimes read as two lines, but may be scanned as one: the first part as a *Dactylic trimeter catalectic* (XIII.), and the second as an *Iambic dimeter*, consisting of four iambi (XIV.) This metre is styled Dactylico-iambic.

1. Pēttī | nĭhīl | mē sīc | ŭt ānt | ĕā | jŭvāt.
2. Scrībĕrĕ | vērsĭcŭ | lōs ‖ ămō | rĕ pēr | cūssūm | grăvī.—(*Epod.* 11.)

XVI. Stanzas of two lines; the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second is sometimes read as two lines, but always scanned in two parts,—the first *Iambic dimeter* (XIV.), the second *Dactylic trimeter catalectic* (XV.) This metre is styled Iambico-dactylic, and is the reverse of the former.

1. Hōrrĭdă | tēmpēs | tās cœl | ūm cōn | trāxĭt ĕt | ĭmbrēs.
4. Ōccā | sĭō | nēm dē | dīē ‖ dūmquĕ vĭ | rēnt gĕnŭ | ā.—(*Epod.* 13.)

XVII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second *Iambic dimeter* (XV.); as,

1. Nōx ĕrăt | ēt cœl | ō fūl | gēbāt | lūnă sĕ | rēnō.
Ĭntĕr | mĭnōr | ă sī | dĕrā.—(*Epod.* 15.)

XVIII. Stanzas of two lines: the first is *Dactylic hexameter* (I.); the second *Iambic trimeter* (XIV.); as,

1. Āltĕrā | jām tĕrī | tūr bēl | līs cīv | īlībŭs | ætās.
2. Sŭīs | ĕt īp | să Rō | mă vīr | ībūs | rŭīt.—(*Epod.* 16.)

XIX. Single lines: *Iambic trimeter;* as,

Jām jām | ēffĭ | cācī | dō mănŭs | scĭēn | tĭæ.—(*Epod.* 17.)

Index to the Metres of Horace.

Æli vetusto, ... 9
Æquam memento, ... 9
Altera jam teritur, ... 18
Angustam amice, ... 9
At O deorum, ... 14
Bacchum in remotis, ... 9
Beatus ille, ... 14
Cœlo supinas, ... 9
Cœlo tonantem, ... 9
Cum tu, Lydia, ... 3
Cur me querelis, ... 9
Delicta majorum, ... 9
Descende cœlo, ... 9
Dianam teneræ, ... 5
Diffugere nives, ... 13
Dive, quem proles, ... 2
Divis orte bonis, ... 6
Donarem pateras, ... 1
Donec gratus eram, ... 3
Eheu! fugaces, ... 9
Est mihi nonum, ... 2
Et thure et fidibus, ... 3
Exegi monumentum, ... 1
Faune Nympharum, ... 2
Festo quid potius, ... 3
Herculis ritu, ... 2
Horrida tempestas, ... 16
Ibis Liburnis, ... 14
Icci, beatis, ... 9
Ille et nefasto, ... 9
Impios parræ, ... 2
Inclusam Danaen, ... 6
Intactis opulentior, ... 3
Integer vitæ, ... 2
Jam jam efficaci, ... 19
Jam pauca aratro, ... 9
Jam satis terris, ... 2
Jam veris comites, ... 6
Justum et tenacem, ... 9
Laudabant alii, ... 7
Lupis et agnis, ... 14
Lydia, dic, ... 8
Mæcenas atavis, ... 1
Mala soluta, ... 14
Martiis cœlebs, ... 2
Mater sæva cupidinum, . . . 3
Mercuri, facunde, ... 2
Mercuri, nam te, ... 2
Miserarum est, ... 12
Montium custos, ... 2
Motum ex Metello, ... 9
Musis amicus, ... 9
Natis in usum, ... 9
Ne forte credas, ... 9
Nolis longa feræ, ... 6
Non ebur neque, ... 11
Non semper imbres, ... 9
Non usitatis, ... 9
Nullam, Vare, ... 11
Nullus argento, ... 2
Nunc est bibendum, ... 9
O Diva, gratum, ... 9
O fons Bandusiæ, ... 5
O matre pulchra, ... 9
O nata mecum, ... 9
O navis, referunt, ... 5
O sæpe mecum, ... 9
O Venus, regina, ... 2
Odi profanum, ... 9
Otium divos, ... 2
Parcus deorum, ... 9
Parentis olim, ... 14
Pastor cum traheret, ... 6
Persicos odi, ... 2
Phœbe sylvarum, ... 2
Phœbus volentem, ... 9
Pindarum quisquis, ... 2
Poscimur si quid, ... 2
Quæ cura patrum, ... 9
Qualem ministrum, ... 9
Quando repostum, ... 14
Quantum distet, ... 3
Quem tu, Melpomene, ... 3
Quem virum, ... 2
Quid bellicosus, ... 9
Quid dedicatum, ... 9
Quid immerentes, ... 14
Quis desiderio, ... 6
Quis multa gracilis, ... 5
Quo me Bacche, ... 3
Quo, quo, scelesti, ... 14
Rectius vives, ... 2
Scriberis Vario, ... 6
Septimi, Gades, ... 2
Sic te Diva potens, ... 3
Solvitur acris hyems, ... 4
Te maris et terræ, ... 7
Tu ne quæsieris, ... 10
Tyrrhena regum, ... 9
Velox amœnum, ... 9
Vides ut alta, ... 9
Vile potabis, ... 2

APPENDIX.

SYNOPTICAL TABLES.

GENDERS.

	1st Decl.	2d Decl.	3d Decl.	4th Decl.	5th Decl.
Masculine,	*	er, ir, ur, us,	er, or, os, n, o,	us,	*
Feminine,	a,	(us),	io, as, es, is, aus, x, s *imp. long* do, go,	*	es,
Neuter,	*	um.	c, a, l, e, t, ar, men, ur, us.	u.	*none.*

DECLENSIONS.

Nouns.

SINGULAR.

	First.	Second.		Third.		Fourth.		Fifth.
	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	ă,	ŭs, ĕr,	ŭm,	*various.*	*various.*	ŭs,	ū,	ēs,
Gen.	æ,	ī,	ī,	ĭs,	ĭs,	ūs,	ūs,	ēi,
Dat.	æ,	ō,	ō,	ī,	ī,	uī,	ū,	ēi,
Acc.	ăm,	ŭm,	ŭm,	ĕm (ĭm),	*like nom.*	ŭm,	ū,	ĕm,
Voc.	ă,	ĕ,	ŭm,	*like nom.*	*like nom.*	ŭs,	ū,	ēs,
Abl.	ā.	ō.	ō.	ĕ (ī).	ĕ (ī).	ū.	ū.	ĕ.

PLURAL.

	First.	Second.		Third.		Fourth.		Fifth.
	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	æ,	ī,	ă,	ēs,	ă (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Gen.	ārum,	ōrum,	ōrum,	ŭm (ium),	ŭm (ium),	uŭm,	uŭm,	ērum,
Dat.	īs,	īs,	īs,	ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus (ūbūs),		ēbŭs,
Acc.	ās,	ōs,	ă,	ēs,	ă (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Voc.	æ,	ī,	ă,	ēs,	ă (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Abl.	īs.	īs.	īs.	ĭbus.	ĭbus.	ĭbus.	ĭbus.	ēbus.

Adjectives.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ŭs, ĕr,	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	æ,	ă.
Gen.	ī,	æ,	ī.	ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
Dat.	ō,	æ,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.
Acc.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ă.
Voc.	ĕ, ĕr,	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	æ,	ă.
Abl.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.

THIRD DECLENSION. (General Form.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	—	—	—	es,	es,	ĭă.
Gen.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ĭs.	ium,	ium,	ium.
Dat.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.
Acc.	ĕm,	ĕm,	—	ēs,	ēs,	ĭă.
Voc.	*like nom.*,	*like nom.*,	*like nom.*	ēs,	ēs,	ĭă.
Abl.	ĕ, *or* ī,	ĕ, *or* ī,	ĕ, *or* ī.	ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.

THIRD DECLENSION. (Adjectives in *IS—E.*)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ĕ.	ēs,	ēs,	ĭa.
Gen.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ĭs.	ium,	ium,	ium.
Dat.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.
Acc.	ĕm,	ĕm,	ĕ.	ēs,	ēs,	ĭa.
Voc.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ĕ.	ēs,	ēs,	ĭa.
Abl.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ĭbus,	ĭbus,	ĭbus.

FORM FOR THE COMPARATIVE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iōr,	iōr,	ius.	iōres,	iōres,	iōra.
Gen.	iōris,	iōris,	iōris.	iōrum,	iōrum,	iōrum.
Dat.	iōri,	iōri,	iōri.	iorĭbus,	iorĭbus,	iorĭbus.
Acc.	iōrem,	iōrem,	ius.	iōres,	iōres,	iōra.
Voc.	iōr,	iōr,	ius.	iōres,	iōres,	iōra.
Abl.	iōre, *or* iōri, *etc.*			iorĭbus,	iorĭbus,	iorĭbus.

GENDER RULES.

FROM THE SIGNIFICATION.

I. What nouns denote a *he* are masculine,
But every *she* as female we decline.

(*Exc.*) Some offices of men we female make,
And from the ending the right gender take:
Excubiæ, opĕra, also copiæ,
Vigiliæ, curia, and custodiæ.
Prostibŭlum, scortum, servitium, we have
As neuters, though meaning a female or slave.

II. Months, rivers, winds, and mountains pass for *he's*,
Trees, countries, cities, isles, and herbs are *she's*,
With gems, and ships that sail the seas.

(*Exc.* 1) Call *rŭbus*, *dūmus* males, and trees in *ster*,
Trees neuter are in *ur*, and *um*, and *er*.

(*Exc.* 2) What hills or rivers end in *a*
Are mostly fem'nine, except *Adria*.

(*Exc.* 3) Cities in *i* and *o*, and *Agrăgas*
Are males; but *ur* and *um* for neuters pass.

(*Exc.* 4) Cities ending in *us* of the third, we do name
As males; *Sason*, *Tunes*, and *Tecmon*, the same.

(*Exc.* 5) Those sing'lar in *i*, and *a* plural, are neuter;
And so we decline *Gadir*, *Argos*, and *Tuder*.

III. Some nouns there are a general sense which have,
Denote each sex, and so both genders crave:
Conjux atque *pārens*, *infans*, *patruēlis*, *hæres*,
Affīnis, *vindex*, *jūdex*, *dux*, *mīles*, et *hostis*,
Augur et *antistes*, *martyr*, *convīva*, *sacerdos*,
*Munĭcep*sque, *vātes*, *adolescens*, *cīvis* et *auctor*,
Custos, *præs*, *cŏmes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bos*que, *cănis*que.

IV. The following nouns which in order we touch on,
Are common in sense, but not so in construction:
Advĕna, cœlicŏla, cliens, assecla, camēlus,
*Transvĕna, ruricŏla, cocles, alienagĕna*que
Agricŏla, juvĕnis, obses opĭfexque, lanista,
Eques, exul, nēmo et *index, aurīga, latro*que
Homicīda, princeps et *paricīda, indigĕna*que
Interpres, hospes, lixa, cum *pŭgil, hŏmo*que,
Pĕdes et *pincerna, præsul, fur, rabŭla, sĕnex.*

FROM THE ENDING — FIRST DECLENSION.

V. The First declension ends in *a;*
Each noun is feminine, as *hæc mūsa.*

(*Exc.*) *Planēta, comēta,* though ending in *a,*
Have hic, *pascha* hoc; doubtful *talpa, dāma.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

VI. The Second ends in *er, ir, ur,* and *us,*
And should be masculine, like domĭnus.

VII. Greek nouns in *us* are mostly feminine found,
With *alvus,* the belly, and *hŭmus,* the ground;
Together with *cŏlus,* a woman's distaff,
And *vannus,* a fan to winnow out chaff.

VIII. All nouns in *um* with neuters place,
And substantives that vary in no case;
Add *vīrus,* juice or poison, and *pelăgus,* the sea,
But *vulgus* hic et hoc its gender claims to be.

IX. *Pampĭnus* and *grossus, barbĭtus, camēlus,*
Balănus and *atŏmus,* together with *phasēlus,*
Are masculine or feminine, so the grammars tell us.

THIRD DECLENSION.

X. The Third has males in *er*, *or*, *os*, *n*, *o*;
Long words are feminine in *do* and *go*.

(*Exc.* 1) Hoc *spinther*, *ver*, *ĭter*, *gingĭber*, *lăver*,
And *ūber* and *tūber*, and *sĭser*, *papāver*,
And *cĭcer*, and *pĭper*, *lăser*, *cadāver*.

(*Exc.* 2) *Cor*, *ador*, *æquor*, *os*, and *marmor*
Are neuter; hæc, *dos*, *cos*, and *arbor*.

(*Exc.* 3) Hoc *inguen* and *glūten*, with *pollen* and *unguen*;
Hæc *aëdon*, *halcyon*, *īcon* and *sindon*.

(*Exc.* 4) *Grando*, *căro* and *hālo* are feminine too;
But *harpăgo* the masculine claims as its due.

XI. Third nouns in *io* mostly hæc procure,
With *as*, *aus*, *es*, *is*, *x*, and *s* impure.

(*Exc.* 1) Nouns ending in *io* which numbers express,
Or substance, material, are males without guess.

(*Exc.* 2) *As*, *assis*, and nouns in *as*—*antis* hic name;
Vas, *vassis*, and nouns in *as*—*atis*, hoc claim.

(*Exc.* 3) *Cacoëthes* not varied with all of this stock,
And *nepenthes*, *aes*, *panăces*, always have hoc.

XII. A number excepted in *es*, *is*, *s*, *x*,
Are males; for example, rex, phœnix, bombyx.

(*a*) Rex, phœnix, bombyx, chālybs, vărix,
Grex, vortex, sōrex, volvox, călix:

(*b*) Gryps, cespes, tradux, līmes, ensis,
Glis, fōmes, torris, gurges, mensis:

(*c*) Cenchris, vēpres, vermis, vertex,
Bes, callis, caulis, fustis, vērvex:

(*d*) Mons, spādix, rŭdens, vectis, follis,
Pons, tērmes, axis, tăpes, collis,
Mugĭlis, fornix, lĕbes, pollis:

(*e*) Liēnis, urpex, sentis, ăpex,
Dens, orbis, frŭtex, torris, lătex:

(*f*) Pes, palmes, pŏples, stīpes, trāmes,
And paries, caudex, tŭdes, āmes:

(*g*) Seps, unguis, magnes, sanguis, pūlex,
So pōdex, mūrex, hydrops, cŭlex:

(*h*) Acinăces, postis, piscis, fascis,
Fons, coccyx, lăpis, cīmex, cassis:

(*i*) All nouns in *nis*, with onyx, stŏrax,
Cucŭmis, natrix, vōmis, thōrax:

(*j*) And rŭmex, mĕrops, nefrens, ŏryx,
So hallux, hallex, cōdex, pollex.

XIII. The poets these for males or females take,
Just as it serves their turn for verses' sake:
Lynx, būbo, perdix, also fīnis,
Calx, līmax, ŏbex, torques, cĭnis,
Scrobs, pulvis, clūnis, pūmex, sandyx,
Canālis, corbis, ădeps, imbrex,
Stirps, grus, et sĭlex, anguis cortex.

XIV. Nouns ending in *c*, *a*, *l*, *e*, *t* (calet), *ar*, *men*, *ur*, and *us*,
May with the neuter kind be placed by us.

(*Exc.* 1) *Uris*, *utis*, and *udis*, from *us*, we design,
If more than one syllable, with hæc to decline.

(*Exc.* 2) *Sol*, *turtur*, *sălar*, *mus*, and *trĭpus*,
With *furfur*, *vultur*, *sal*, and *lepus*,
Are always masculine with us.

NOTE.—*Sal* is masculine in the plural.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

XV. The Fourth in *us* are chiefly masculine;
But nouns in *u* as neuters we decline;
Portĭcus, trĭbus, mănus, are feminine,
With *cŏlus, fīcus, dŏmus;* but these three
Both of the Second and the Fourth may be;
Cupressus, cornus, pīnus, such you'll see.

(*Exc.*) *Pĕnus,* provision, and *spĕcus,* a cave,
May both declensions and *all genders* have.

XVI. Pampĭnus, grossus, barbĭtus, camēlus,
Balănus, cŏlus, atŏmus, phasēlus,
Are males or females—so the learned tell us:
Hoc vīrus, chaos, pelăgus, and mēlos.
Hic aut *hoc* vulgus the language doth show,
And chaos has always the ablative chao.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

XVII. The Fifth are feminine, and end in *es;*
But one is masculine—*meridies.*

(*Exc.*) In the singular as doubtful is *dies* declined,
But masculine only in the plural we find.

IRREGULAR AND AUXILIARY VERB.

SUM, ESSE, FUI, FUTURUS, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	*Singular,*	sum,	*I am,*
		ĕs,	*thou art,*
		est,	*he is;*
	Plural,	sŭmus,	*we are,*
		estis,	*you are,*
		sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect Tense.	ĕram,	*I was,*
	ĕras,	*thou wast,*
	ĕrat,	*he was;*
	erāmus,	*we were,*
	erātis,	*you were,*
	ĕrant,	*they were.*
Future Tense.	ĕro,	*I shall* or *will be,*
	ĕris,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be,*
	ĕrit,	*he shall* or *will be;*
	erĭmus,	*we shall* or *will be,*
	erĭtis,	*you shall* or *will be,*
	ĕrunt,	*they shall* or *will be.*
Perfect Tense.	fui,	*I was* or *have been,*
	fuisti,	*thou wast* or *hast been,*
	fuit,	*he was* or *has been;*
	fuĭmus,	*we were* or *have been,*
	fuistis,	*you were* or *have been.*
	fuērunt, *or* -ēre,	*they were* or *have been.*
Pluperfect Tense.	fuissem,	*I had been,*
	fuisses,	*thou hadst been,*
	fuisset,	*he had been;*
	fuissēmus,	*we had been,*
	fuissētis,	*you had been,*
	fuissent,	*they had been.*
Fut. Perf. Tense.	fuĕro,	*I shall have been,*
	fuĕris,	*thou wilt have been,*
	fuĕrit,	*he will have been;*
	fuerĭmus,	*we shall have been,*
	fuerĭtis,	*you will have been,*
	fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	sim,	*I may* or *can be,*
	sis,	*thou mayst* or *canst be,*
	sit,	*he may* or *can be;*
	sīmus,	*we may* or *can be,*
	sītis,	*you may* or *can be,*
	sint,	*they may* or *can be.*

Imperfect Tense.	essem,	*I might, could, would,* or *should be,*
	esses,	*thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,* etc., *be,*
	esset,	*he might, could, would,* or *should be;*
	essēmus,	*we might, could, would,* or *should be,*
	essētis,	*you might, could, would,* or *should be,*
	essent,	*they might, could, would,* or *should be.*
Perfect Tense.	fuĕrim,	*I may have been,*
	fuĕris,	*thou mayst have been,*
	fuĕrit,	*he may have been;*
	fuerĭmus,	*we may have been,*
	fuerĭtis,	*you may have been,*
	fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*
Pluperfect Tense.	fuissem,	*I might have been,*
	fuisses,	*thou mightst have been,*
	fuisset,	*he might have been;*
	fuissēmus,	*we might have been,*
	fuissētis,	*you might have been,*
	fuissent,	*they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2.	ĕs, *or* esto,	*be thou,* or *do thou be,*
3.	esto,	*let him be;*
2.	este, *or* estōte,	*be ye,* or *do ye be,*
3.	sunto,	*let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	esse,	*to be.*
Perfect,	fuisse,	*to have been.*
Future,	futūrus esse,	*to be about to be.*
Fut. Perf.,	futūrus fuisse,	*to have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future,	futūrus,	*about to be.*

Two compounds of *sum*, namely, *absum* and *præsum*, have a present participle in *ens: absens* and *præsens*, though these are to be regarded rather as adjectives.

SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. (*I love, do love, am loving,* etc.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	ăm	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis, -ant.
2.	mŏn	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis, -ent.
3.	rĕg	-o,	is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis, -unt.
	căp	-io,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis, -iunt.
4.	aud	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis, -iunt.

IMPERFECT TENSE. (*I loved, did love, was loving,* etc.)

1.	ăm -ā	bam,	bas,	bat;	bāmus,	bātis. bant.
2.	mŏn-ē					
3.	rĕg -ē					
	cap-iē					
4.	aud-iē					

FUTURE TENSE. (*I shall* or *will love,* etc.)

1.	am -ā	bo,	bis	bit	bĭmus,	bĭtis, bunt.
2.	mŏn-ē					
3.	rĕg	-am,	-es	-et	-ēmus,	-ētis, -ent.
	căp					
4.	aud	-iam,	-ies	-iet	-iēmus,	-iētis, -ient.

PERFECT TENSE. (*I loved, did love, have loved,* etc.)

1.	amāv	-i,	-isti,	it;	-ĭmus,	-istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.
2.	mŏnu					
3.	rex					
	cēp					
4.	audīv					

PLUPERFECT TENSE. (*I had loved,* etc.)

1.	amāv	-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis, -ĕrant.
2.	mŏnu					
3.	rex					
	cēp					
4.	audīv					

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE. (*I shall have loved,* etc.)

1.	amāv	-ĕro,	ĕris,	-ĕrit;	erĭmus,	-erĭtis, -ĕrint.
2.	mŏnu					
3.	rex					
	cēp					
4.	audīv					

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. (*I may* or *can love,* etc.)

1.	ăm	-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis, -ent.
2.	mŏne					
3.	rĕg	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis, -ant.
	căpi					
4.	audi					

Synopsis of the Four Conjugations.—Active Voice.

Subjunctive Mood—*Continued.*

1. am -ā
2. mon-ē
3. reg -ĕ / cap -ĕ
4. aud -ī

IMPERFECT TENSE. (*I might, could, would,* or *should love,* etc.)

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
rem	res,	ret;	rēmus,	rētis,	rent.

1. amav
2. monu
3. rex / cep
4. audīv

PERFECT TENSE. (*I may* or *can have loved,* etc.)

-ĕrim, -ĕris, -ĕrit; -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -ĕrint.

1. amav
2. monu
3. rex / cep
4. audīv

PLUPERFECT TENSE. (*I might, could,* etc., *have loved,* etc.)

-issem, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT. *Love thou,* or *do thou love,* etc.	1. ăm -a *or* -āto,	-āto;	-āte *or* -atōte,	-anto.
	2. mŏn-e *or* -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* -etōte,	-ento.
	3. rĕg -e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -itōte,	-unto.
	3. căp -e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -itōte,	-iunto.
	4. aud -i *or* -īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* -itōte,	-iunto.

Infinitive Mood.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRESENT,	amāre,	monēre,	regĕre, capĕre,	audīre.
PERFECT,	amavisse,	monuisse,	rexisse, cepisse,	audivisse.
FUTURE,	amatūrus esse,	monitūrus esse,	rectūrus, captūrus esse,	auditūrus esse.
FUT. PERF.,	amatūrus fuisse,	monitūrus fuisse,	rectūrus, captūrus fuisse,	auditūrus fuisse.

Participles.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRES., *Loving,* etc.,	āmans,	mŏnens,	rĕgens, capiens,	audiens.
FUT., *About to love,*	amatūrus,	monitūrus,	rectūrus, captūrus,	auditūrus.

Gerund.

1. Nom. *wanting;* Gen. amandi; Dat. amando, *etc.*
2. Nom. *wanting;* Gen. monendi; Dat. monendo, *etc.*
3. Nom. *wanting;* Gen. regendi / capiendi; Dat. regendo, *etc.* / capiendo, *etc.*
4. Nom. *wanting;* Gen. audiendi; Dat. audiendo, *etc.*

Supines.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
Former,	amātum,	monĭtum,	rectum, captum,	audītum.
Latter,	amātu,	monĭtu,	rectu, captu,	audītu.

SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. (*I am loved*, etc.)

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
1. ăm	-or,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
2. mŏn	-eor,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur.
3. rĕg / cap	-or,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-untur.
	-ior,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-iuntur.
4. aud	-ior,	-īris *or* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-imĭni,	-iuntur.

IMPERFECT TENSE. (*I was loved*, etc.)

1. am -ā
2. mon-ē
3. reg -ē / capi-ē
4. aud-iē

bar, bāris *or* bāre, bātur; bāmur, bamĭni, bantur.

FUTURE TENSE. (*I shall* or *will be loved*, etc.)

1. am -ā
2. mon-ē

bor, bĕris *or* bĕre, bĭtur; bĭmur, bimĭni, buntur.

3. reg / cap
4. aud

-ar, -ēris *or* -ēre, -ētur; -ēmur, -emĭni, -entur.

-iar, -iēris *or* -iēre, -iētur, -iēmur, -iemĭni, -ientur.

PERFECT TENSE. (*I was* or *have been loved*, etc.)

1. amātus
2. monĭtus
3. rectus / captus
4. audītus

sum	es	est	sŭmus	estis	sunt
or	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*
fui,	fuisti,	fuit;	fuĭmus,	fuistis,	fuērunt, fuēre.

PLUPERFECT TENSE. (*I had been loved*, etc.)

1. amātus
2. monĭtus
3. rectus / captus
4. audītus

ĕram	ĕras	ĕrat	erāmus	erātis,	ĕrant
or	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*
fuĕram,	fuĕras,	fuĕrat;	fuerāmus,	fuerātis,	fuĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE. (*I shall have been loved*, etc.)

1. amātus
2. monĭtus
3. rectus / captus
4. audītus

ĕro	ĕris	ĕrit	erĭmus	erĭtis	ĕrint
or	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*
fuĕro,	fuĕris,	fuĕrit;	fuerĭmus,	fuerĭtis,	fuĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. (*I may* or *can be loved*, etc.)

1. ăm	-er,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	emĭni,	-entur.
2. mone						
3. rĕg / capi	-ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
4. audi						

Synopsis of the Four Conjugations.—Passive Voice.

Subjunctive Mood—*Continued.*

IMPERFECT TENSE. (*I might, could,* etc., *be loved,* etc.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1. am -ā						
2. mon-ē						
3. reg -ĕ / cap -ĕ	rer,	rēris *or* rēre,	rētur;	rēmur,	remĭni,	rentur.
4. aud -ī						

PERFECT TENSE. (*I may* or *can have been loved,* etc.)

1. amātus	sim	sis	sit	sīmus	sītis	sint
2. monĭtus	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*
3. rectus / captus	fuĕrim,	fuĕris,	fuĕrit;	fuerĭmus,	fuerītis,	fuĕrint.
4. audītus						

PLUPERFECT TENSE. (*I might, could,* etc., *have been loved.*)

1. amātus	essem	esses	esset	essēmus	essētis	essent
2. monĭtus	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*	*or*
3. rectus / captus	fuissem,	fuisses,	fuisset;	fuissēmus,	fuissētis,	fuissent.
4. audītus						

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	1. am -āre *or* -ātor,	-ātor;	-amĭni,	-antor.
	2. mon-ēre *or* -ētor,	-ētor;	-emĭni,	-entor.
Be thou loved, or *do thou be loved,* etc.	3. reg -ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imĭni,	-untor.
	3. cap -ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imĭni,	-iuntor.
	4. aud -īre *or* -ītor,	-ītor;	-imĭni,	-iuntor.

Infinitive Mood.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.	FOURTH.
PRESENT,	amāri,	monēri,	rĕgi, căpi,	audīri.
PERFECT,	amātus, esse *or* fuisse,	monĭtus, esse *or* fuisse,	rectus, captus, esse *or* fuisse.	audītus, esse *or* fuisse.
FUTURE,	amātum īri,	monĭtum īri,	rectum, captum īri,	audītum īri.

Participles.

	FIRST.	SECOND.	THIRD.		FOURTH.
PRES. *Loved,* or *being loved.*	amātus,	monĭtus,	rectus,	captus,	audītus.
FUTURE AND GERUNDIVE.	amandus,	monendus,	regendus,	capĭendus,	audiendus.

LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL VERBS,

REGULAR AND IRREGULAR, OF THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

First Conjugation.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the first conjugation?

The regular terminations of verbs of the first conjugation are *o, āre, āvi, ātum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*to love.*
Muto,	mutāre,	mutāvi,	mutatum,	*to change.*

Mention those that are irregular in the perfect and supine.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Do,	dăre,	dĕdi,	dătum,	*to give.*
Sto,	stāre,	stĕti,	stătum,	*to stand.*
Lăvo,	lavāre, *or* lavĕre,	lāvi,	lōtum, lautum, lavātum,	*to wash.*
Pōto,	potāre,	potāvi,	pōtum, *or* potātum,	*to drink.*
Jŭvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	*to help.*
Cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	*to lie down.*
Dŏmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	*to subdue.*
Sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum,	*to sound.*
Tŏno,	tonāre,	tonui,	tonĭtum,	*to thunder.*
Vĕto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetĭtum,	*to forbid.*
Crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	*to make a noise.*
Mĭco,	micāre,	micui,	———,	*to glitter.*
Frĭco,	fricāre,	fricui,	frictum,	*to rub.*
Sĕco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	*to cut.*
Nĕco,	necāre,	necāvi, *or* necui,	necātum,	*to kill.*
Lăbo,	labāre,	———	———,	*to fall,* or *faint.*
Nexo,	nexāre,	———	———,	*to bind.*
Plĭco,	plicāre,	———	———,	*to fold.*

What four compounds of *do* are conjugated like *do?*

Circumdo, *to surround;* pessundo, *to ruin;* satisdo, *to give surety;* and venundo, *to sell,* are conjugated like *do.*

To what conjugation do other compounds of *do* belong?

Other compounds of *do* belong to the third conjugation. These have *dĭdi* in the perfect, and *dĭtum* in the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Addo,	addĕre,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	*to add.*
Condo,	condĕre,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	*to build.*
Reddo,	reddĕre,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	*to return.*

What changes do compounds of *sto* make?

Compounds of *sto*, with a monosyllable, make the perfect *stĭti;* with a dissyllable, *stĕti*. Some have *stĭtum* and *stătum* in the supine, and many want the supine altogether; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Consto,	constāre,	constĭti,	constĭtum,	*to consist.*
Præsto,	præstāre,	præstĭti,	{ præstĭtum, præstātum, }	*to excel.*
Circumsto,	circumstāre,	circumstĕti,	———	*to surround.*

How do the compounds of *plĭco* differ from the simple verb?

Duplĭco, *to double;* multiplĭco, *to multiply;* replĭco, *to unfold;* and supplĭco, *to supplicate*, have regularly *āvi* and *ātum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Duplĭco,	duplicāre,	duplicāvi,	duplicātum,	*to double.*
Supplĭco,	supplicāre,	supplicāvi,	supplicātum,	*to supplicate.*

Other compounds of *plĭco* have either *ui* and *ĭtum*, or *avi* and *ātum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Applĭco,	applicāre,	{ applicui, *or* applicavi,	{ applicĭtum, applicātum, }	*to apply.*
Explĭco,	explicāre,	{ explicui, *or* explicāvi,	explicĭtum, explicātum,	*to unfold, explain.*

Second Conjugation.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the second conjugation?

The regular terminations of verbs of the second conjugation are *eo, ēre, ui, ĭtum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
Habeo,	habēre,	habui,	habĭtum,	*to have.*

In the compounds of *habeo*, what change is made?

The compounds of *habeo* change *a* into *i*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Adhibeo,	adhibēre,	adhibui,	adhibĭtum,	*to admit.*
Prohibeo,	prohibēre,	prohibui,	prohibĭtum,	*to forbid.*

As a general rule, what verbs of the second conjugation want the supine?

Neuter verbs of the second conjugation which make *ui* in the perfect want the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Madeo,	madēre,	madui,	———	*to be wet.*
Splendeo,	splendēre,	splendui,	———	*to shine.*

Conjugate the verbs which are exceptions to this rule.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Caleo,	calēre,	calui,	calĭtum,	*to be hot.*
Careo,	carēre,	carui,	carĭtum,	*to want.*
Doleo,	dolēre,	dolui,	dolĭtum,	*to grieve.*
Jaceo,	jacēre,	jacui,	jacĭtum,	*to lie down.*
Lateo,	latēre,	latui,	latĭtum,	*to lie hid.*
Liceo,	licēre,	licui,	licĭtum,	*to be valued.*
Mereo,	merēre,	merui,	merĭtum,	*to deserve.*
Noceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocĭtum,	*to hurt.*
Pareo,	parēre,	parui,	parĭtum,	*to appear.*
Placeo,	placēre,	placui,	placĭtum,	*to please.*
Taceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacĭtum,	*to be silent.*
Valeo,	valēre,	valui,	valĭtum,	*to be in health.*

What is to be observed of *taceo*, both as respects its use and the change which it undergoes in composition?

Taceo is used transitively as well as intransitively. Its compounds change *a* into *i*, and these want the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Conticeo,	conticēre,	conticui,	———	*to keep silent.*
Reticeo,	reticēre,	reticui,	———	*to be silent.*

The compounds of *placeo* also change *a* into *i*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Displiceo,	displicēre,	displicui,	displicĭtum,	*to displease.*

Conjugate the following verbs, which make their perfects and supines variously:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Doceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	*to teach.*
Teneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	*to hold.*
Misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	mistum, *or* mixtum,	*to mix.*
Censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censum,	*to think, judge.*
Torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	*to roast, scorch.*
Sorbeo,	sorbēre,	sorbui,	sorptum,	*to sup.*
Timeo,	timēre,	timui,	———	*to fear.*
Sileo,	silēre,	silui,	———	*to be silent.*
Arceo,	arcēre,	arcui,	———	*to drive away.*
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	*to dine.*
Video,	vidēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*to see.*
Sedeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	*to sit.*
Strideo,	stridēre,	strīdi,	———	*to make a noise.*
Frendeo,	frendēre,	frendi,	fressum,	*to gnash the teeth.*
Mordeo,	mordēre,	momordi,	morsum,	*to bite.*
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pependi,	pensum,	*to hang.*
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spospondi,	sponsum,	*to promise.*
Tondeo,	tondēre,	totondi,	tonsum,	*to clip, shave.*
Foveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	*to cherish.*
Moveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*to move.*
Voveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	*to vow.*
Caveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	*to beware of.*
Faveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	*to favor.*
Paveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	———	*to be afraid.*
Ferveo,	fervēre,	ferbui,	———	*to boil.*
Conniveo,	connivēre,	connīvi, *or* -ixi,	———	*to wink.*
Deleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*to destroy.*
Compleo,	complēre,	complēvi,	complētum,	*to fill.*
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	*to weep.*
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	*to spin.*
Vieo,	viēre,	viēvi,	vietum,	*to hoop a vessel.*
Cieo,	ciēre,	(cīvi),	cītum,	*to stir up.*
Oleo,	olēre,	olui,	(olĭtum),	*to smell.*
Suadeo,	suadēre,	suasi,	suasum,	*to advise.*
Rideo,	ridēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	*to laugh.*
Maneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*to stay.*

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Hæreo,	hærēre,	hæsi,	hæsum,	*to stick.*
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	*to burn.*
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	*to wipe.*
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*to soothe.*
Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum, *or* mulctum,	*to milk.*
Jubeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	*to order.*
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	*to indulge.*
Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	*to twist.*
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	*to increase.*
Urgeo,	urgēre,	ursi,	———	*to press.*
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	———	*to shine.*
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi,	———	*to swell.*
Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	———	*to be cold.*
Lugeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	———	*to mourn.*
Luceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	———	*to shine.*
Frigeo,	frigēre,	frixi,	———	*to be cold.*

What is to be observed of the compounds of *arceo?*

The compounds of *arceo* change *a* into *e*; and have a supine in *ĭtum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Coerceo,	coercēre,	coercui,	coercĭtum,	*to restrain.*
Exerceo,	exercēre,	exercui,	exercĭtum,	*to exercise.*

What is to be observed of the compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo?*

The compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo* do not double the first syllable of the perfect. *Impendeo*, to overhang, has neither perfect nor supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Remordeo,	remordēre,	remorsi,	remorsum,	*to bite again.*
Impendeo,	impendēre,	impendi,	impensum,	*to overhang.*
Propendeo,	propendēre,	propendi,	propensum,	*to hang down.*
Despondeo,	despondēre,	despondi,	desponsum,	*to betroth.*
Respondeo,	respondēre,	respondi,	responsum,	*to answer.*
Detondeo,	detondēre,	detondi,	detonsum,	*to shear off.*

What verbs of the second conjugation want both the perfect and the supine?

Aveo,	*to desire.*	Liveo,	*to become livid.*
Denseo,	*to grow thick.*	Mœreo,	*to grieve.*
Flaveo,	*to be yellow.*	Renīdeo,	*to shine.*
Glabreo,	*to be smooth.*	Polleo,	*to be powerful.*
Hebeo,	*to be blunt.*	Scateo,	*to gush forth.*
Lacteo,	*to grow milky.*		

Third Conjugation.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the third conjugation?

Verbs of the third conjugation have no regular terminations, except in the present infinitive, which ends in *ĕre.* The perfects and supines are variously modified, as will be seen in the following list, which are arranged according to the termination of the present indicative.

IO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Facio,	facĕre,	fēci,	factum,	*to do, make.*
Jacio,	jacĕre,	jēci,	jactum,	*to throw.*
Aspicio,	aspicĕre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	*to behold.*
Allicio,	allicĕre,	allexi,	allectum,	*to allure.*
Fodio,	fodĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	*to dig.*
Fugio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugitum,	*to flee.*
Capio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*to take.*
Rapio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*to seize.*
Sapio,	sapĕre,	sapui,	———	*to taste, be wise.*
Cupio,	cupĕre,	cupīvi,	cupītum,	*to desire.*
Pario,	parĕre,	pĕpĕri,	{ partum, *or* parītum, }	*to bring forth.*
Quatio,	quatĕre,	(quassi),	quassum,	*to shake.*

Which of the above verbs undergo a change in composition?

Jacio, capio, rapio, and *sapio,* when compounded, change *a* into *i,* as does *facio* when compounded with a preposition. Other compounds of *facio* retain the *a.* A few ending in *fico* and *ficor* are of the first conjugation; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Rejicio,	rejicĕre,	rejēci,	rejectum,	*to reject.*
Excipio,	excipĕre,	excēpi,	exceptum,	*to except.*
Corripio,	corripĕre,	corripui,	correptum,	*to seize.*
Desipio,	desipĕre,	desipui,	———	*to be foolish.*
Afficio,	afficĕre,	affēci,	affectum,	*to affect.*
Lucrifacio,	lucrifacĕre,	lucrifēci,	lucrifactum,	*to make gain.*
Amplifico,	amplificāre,	amplificāvi,	amplificātum,	*to enlarge.*
Gratificor,	gratificāri,	gratificātus sum (*dep.*),		*to gratify.*

Pario, when compounded, changes *a* into *e*, and becomes of the fourth conjugation, but has *perui* in the perfect, except *comperio* and *reperio*, which have *peri*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Aperio,	aperīre,	aperui,	apertum,	*to open.*
Comperio,	comperīre,	comperi,	compertum,	*to know for certain.*
Reperio,	reperīre,	repēri,	repertum,	*to find.*

The compounds of *quatio* take the form *cutio*, and have *cussi*, *cussum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Concutio,	concutĕre,	concussi,	concussum,	*to shake violently.*
Percutio,	percutĕre,	percussi,	percussum,	*to strike.*

UO.

Acuo,	acuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argūtum,	*to prove.*
Exuo,	exuĕre,	exui,	exūtum,	*to strip off clothes.*
Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	*to moisten.*
Induo,	induĕre,	indui,	indūtum,	*to put on clothes.*
Minuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minūtum,	*to lessen.*
Spuo,	spuĕre,	spui,	spūtum,	*to spit.*
Statuo,	statuĕre,	statui,	statūtum,	*to set, place.*
Sternuo,	sternuĕre,	sternui,	sternūtum,	*to sneeze.*
Suo,	suĕre,	sui,	sūtum,	*to sew.*
Tribuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	*to give.*
Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	*to flow.*
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	*to build.*
Luo,	luĕre,	lui,	luĭtum,	*to pay, wash.*
Ruo,	ruĕre,	rui,	ruĭtum,	*to rush, fall.*
Metuo,	metuĕre,	metui,	———	*to fear.*
Pluo,	pluĕre,	plui,	———	*to rain.*
Congruo,	congruĕre,	congrui,	———	*to agree.*
Ingruo,	ingruĕre,	ingrui,	———	*to assail.*
Annuo,	annuĕre,	annui,	———	*to assent.*

What is to be noted of the compounds of *luo* and *ruo?*

The compounds of *luo* and *ruo* drop *i* in the supine. *Corruo*, to fall together, and *irruo*, to rush on furiously, have no supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Abluo,	abluĕre,	ablui,	ablūtum,	*to wash away.*
Diruo,	diruĕre,	dirui,	dirŭtum,	*to overthrow.*
Corruo,	corruĕre,	corrui,	———	*to fall.*
Irruo,	irruĕre,	irrui,	———	*to rush on.*
		BO.		
Bĭbo,	bibĕre,	bĭbi,	bibĭtum,	*to drink.*
Scăbo,	scabĕre,	scābi,	———	*to scratch.*
Lambo,	lambĕre,	lambi,	———	*to lick.*
Scrībo,	scribĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	*to write.*
Nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	*to veil, be married.*
Glūbo,	glubĕre,	———	———	*to skin, flay.*
		CO.		
Dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*to say.*
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*to lead.*
Vinco,	vincĕre,	vīci,	victum,	*to conquer.*
Parco,	parcĕre,	{peperci, *or* parsi,	{parsum, *or* parcĭtum,	*to spare.*
Ico,	icĕre,	īci,	ictum,	*to strike.*
Cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*to grow.*
		SCO.		
Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*to know.*
Quiesco,	quescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	*to rest.*
Scisco,	sciscĕre,	scīvi,	scītum,	*to ordain.*
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*to be accustomed.*
Pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	*to feed.*
Disco,	discĕre,	didĭci,	———	*to learn.*
Posco,	poscĕre,	poposci,	———	*to demand.*
Glisco,	gliscĕre,	———	———	*to glitter, grow.*

What is to be observed of *nosco* and *pasco?*

The future participle of *nosco* is *nosciturus*, from an old form of the supine. Its compounds make the supine in *ĭtum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Agnosco,	agnoscĕre,	agnōvi,	agnĭtum,	*to own.*
Cognosco,	cognoscĕre,	cognōvi,	cognĭtum,	*to know.*

The compounds of *pasco* change *a* into *e*, make the perfect in *ui*, and have no supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	———	*to restrain.*
Dispesco,	dispescĕre,	dispescui,	———	*to separate.*

DO.

Accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	*to kindle.*
Cūdo,	cudĕre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	*to forge.*
Defendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	*to defend.*
Edo,	edĕre,	ēdi,	ēsum,	*to eat.*
Mando,	mandĕre,	mandi,	mansum,	*to chew.*
Prehendo,	prehendĕre,	prehensi,	prehensum,	*to take hold of.*
Scando,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	*to climb.*
Divĭdo,	dividĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	*to divide.*
Rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	*to shave.*
Claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*to close.*
Plaudo,	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	*to applaud.*
Lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	*to play.*
Trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	*to thrust.*
Lædo,	lædĕre,	læsi,	læsum,	*to hurt.*
Rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	*to gnaw.*
Vădo,	vadĕre,	———	———	*to go.*
Cēdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	*to yield.*
Pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	{passum, *or* pansum,}	*to open.*
Fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	*to pour forth.*
Scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	*to cut.*
Findo,	findĕre,	fĭdi,	fissum,	*to cleave.*
Tundo,	tundĕre,	tutŭdi,	{tunsum, *or* tūsum,}	*to beat.*
Cădo,	cadĕre,	cecĭdi,	cāsum,	*to fall.*
Cædo,	cædĕre,	cecīdi,	cæsum,	*to cut, kill.*
Tendo,	tendĕre,	tetendi,	{tensum, *or* tentum,}	*to stretch.*
Pendo,	pendĕre,	pependi,	pensum,	*to hang.*
Crēdo,	credĕre,	credĭdi,	credĭtum,	*to believe.*
Vendo,	vendĕre,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	*to sell.*
Abscondo,	abscondĕre,	abscondi,	abscondĭtum,	*to hide.*
Strīdo,	stridĕre,	strīdi,	———	*to creak.*
Rŭdo,	rudĕre,	rūdi,	———	*to bray as an ass.*
Sīdo,	sidĕre,	sīdi,	———	*to sink down.*

What changes do some of the verbs in *do* of the third conjugation undergo when compounded?

1. The compounds of *claudo* change *au* into *ū*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Conclūdo,	concludĕre,	conclūsi,	conclūsum,	*to conclude.*
Reclūdo,	recludĕre,	reclūsi,	reclūsum,	*to shut back, open.*

2. The compounds of *plaudo* (except *applaudo* and *circumplaudo*) change *au* into *ō*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Explōdo,	explodĕre,	explōsi,	explōsum,	*to reject.*
Displōdo,	displodĕre,	displōsi,	displōsum,	*to stretch.*

3. The compounds of *lædo* change *æ* into *ī*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Allīdo,	allidĕre,	allīsi,	allīsum,	*to dash against.*
Collīdo,	collidĕre,	collīsi,	collīsum,	*to dash together.*

4. The compounds of *vado* have the perfect and supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Evādo,	evadĕre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	*to escape.*
Invādo,	invadĕre,	invāsi,	invāsum,	*to invade.*

5. The compounds of *tundo* make *tūsi* and *tūsum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Contundo,	contundĕre,	contūsi,	contūsum,	*to bruise.*
Retundo,	retundĕre,	retūsi,	retūsum,	*to drive back.*

6. The compounds of *cădo* change *a* into *ĭ* short:
The compounds of *cædo* change *æ* into *ī* long; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Accĭdo (căd**o**),	accidĕre,	accĭdi,	———	*to happen.*
Accīdo (cæd**o**),	accidĕre,	accīdi,	accīsum,	*to cut about.*

Compounds of *căd**o*** have no supine, except

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Incĭdo,	incidĕre,	incĭdi,	incāsum,	*to fall into.*
Occĭdo,	occidĕre,	occĭdi,	occāsum,	*to fall down.*
Recĭdo,	recidĕre,	recĭdi,	recāsum,	*to fall back.*

GO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi,	cinctum,	*to surround.*
Flīgo,	fligĕre,	flixi,	flictum,	*to dash.*
Jungo,	jungĕre,	junxi,	junctum,	*to join.*
Lingo,	lingĕre,	linxi,	linctum,	*to lick.*
Mungo,	mungĕre,	munxi,	munctum,	*to wipe the nose.*
Plango,	plangĕre,	planxi,	planctum,	*to beat.*
Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*to rule.*
Stinguo,	stinguĕre,	stinxi,	stinctum,	*to dash out.*
Sūgo,	sugĕre,	suxi,	suctum,	*to suck.*
Tĕgo,	tegĕre,	texi,	tectum,	*to cover.*
Tinguo,	tinguĕre,	tinxi,	tinctum,	*to dip.*
Unguo,	unguĕre,	unxi,	unctum,	*to anoint.*
Surgo,	surgĕre,	surrexi,	surrectum,	*to rise.*
Pergo,	pergĕre,	perrexi,	perrectum,	*to go forward.*
Stringo,	stringĕre,	strinxi,	strictum,	*to bind.*
Fingo,	fingĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	*to feign.*
Pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	*to paint.*
Frango,	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	*to break.*
Ago,	agĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	*to do, drive.*
Tango,	tangĕre,	tetĭgi,	tactum,	*to touch.*
Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*to gather, read.*
Pungo,	pungĕre,	pupŭgi,	punctum,	*to prick.*
Pango,	pangĕre,	panxi,	pactum,	*to drive in.*
Spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	*to spread.*
Mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	*to dip, plunge.*
Tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	*to wipe.*
Fīgo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	*to fix.*
Vergo,	vergĕre,	———	———	*to lie toward.*
Clango,	clangĕre,	clanxi,	———	*to sound a trumpet.*
Ningo,	ningĕre,	ninxi,	———	*to snow.*
Ango,	angĕre,	anxi,	———	*to vex, pain.*

What changes do some of the verbs in *go* make when compounded?

1. All the compounds of *flīgo* are conjugated like *flīgo*, except *proflīgo*, to dash down, which is a regular verb of the first conjugation.

2. The compounds of *rĕgo* change ĕ into ĭ; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Corrĭgo,	corrigĕre,	correxi,	correctum,	*to correct.*
Dirĭgo,	dirigĕre,	direxi,	directum,	*to direct.*

3. The compounds of *frango* and *tango* change *a* into *i*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Confringo,	confringĕre,	confrēgi,	confractum,	*to break to pieces.*
Attingo,	attingĕre,	attĭgi,	attactum,	*to touch gently.*

4. The compounds of *ăgo* (except *circumăgo*, to drive round; *perăgo*, to finish; *coăgo*, contracted into *cōgo*, to collect; and *satăgo*, to be busy) change *a* into *ĭ*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Abĭgo,	abigĕre,	abēgi,	abactum,	*to drive away.*

But *dĕgo* (*de* and *ago*), to live; *prodĭgo*, to lavish; *satăgo*, to be busy, want the supine. *Ambĭgo*, to doubt, has neither perfect nor supine.

5. *Lĕgo* (except when compounded with *ad*, *per*, *præ*, *re*, and *sub*) changes *e* into *ĭ*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Collĭgo,	colligĕre,	collēgi,	collectum,	*to collect.*

Dilĭgo, to love; *intellĭgo*, to understand; and *neglĭgo*, to neglect, have *exi* and *ectum*. *Neglĭgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*.

6. The compounds of *pungo* are thus conjugated:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Compungo,	compungĕre,	compunxi,	compunctum,	*to sting.*
Repungo,	repungĕre,	repupŭgi, *or* repunxi,	repunctum,	*to prick again.*

7. *Pango*, when it means to *bargain*, has the perfect *pepĕgi*. Its compounds, which change *a* into *i*, have *pēgi* and *pactum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Compingo,	compingĕre,	compēgi,	compactum,	*to fasten together.*

8. The compounds of *spargo* change *a* into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Aspergo,	aspergĕre,	aspersi,	aspersum,	*to besprinkle.*
Respergo,	respergĕre,	respersi,	respersum,	*to sprinkle back.*

HO.

Trăho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	*to draw.*
Vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	*to carry.*

LO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Cŏlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	*to till, inhabit.*
Consŭlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	*to consult.*
Alo,	alĕre,	alui,	alitum, *or* altum,	*to nourish.*
Mŏlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	*to grind.*
Antecello,	antecellĕre,	antecellui,	———	*to excel.*
Pello,	pellĕre,	pepŭli,	pulsum,	*to drive away.*
Fallo,	fallĕre,	fefelli,	falsum,	*to deceive.*
Vello,	vellĕre,	velli, *or* vulsi,	vulsum,	*to pull.*
Sallo,	sallĕre,	salli,	salsum,	*to salt.*
Psallo,	psallĕre,	psalli,	———	*to play upon an instrument.*
Tollo,	tollĕre,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	*to lift up.*

What changes do some of the verbs in *lo* undergo in composition?

1. *Colo,* compounded with *ob,* changes *o* into *u*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Occŭlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	*to hide.*

Accŏlo, to dwell near, and *circumcŏlo,* to dwell round, have no supine.

2. Other compounds of the obsolete *cello,* like *antecello,* have no supine, except

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Percello,	percellĕre,	percŭli,	perculsum,	*to strike, astonish.*

3. *Refello,* a compound of *fallo,* has no supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Refello,	refellĕre,	refelli,	———	*to confute.*

4. *Vello,* compounded with *de, di,* or *per,* has usually *velli* in the perfect. The other compounds have *velli* or *vulsi.*

5. *Attollo* and *entollo,* have no perfect or supine of their own, but are conjugated with perfects and supines from *fero;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Attollo,	attollĕre,	attŭli,	allātum,	*to raise up.*

MO.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	*to rage, roar.*
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	*to groan.*
Vŏmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	*to vomit.*
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	———	*to tremble.*
Dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	*to take away.*
Prōmo,	promĕre,	prompsi,	promptum,	*to bring out.*
Sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	*to take.*
Cōmo,	comĕre,	compsi,	comptum,	*to deck, dress.*
Emo,	emĕre,	ēmi,	emptum,	*to buy.*
Prĕmo,	premĕre,	pressi,	pressum,	*to press.*

What is to be noted of *dēmo*, *prōmo*, and *sūmo?*

Dēmo, *prōmo*, and *sūmo* are compounds of *ĕmo*. The other compounds of *emo* change *e* into *ĭ*, and are conjugated like the simple verb; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Adĭmo,	adimĕre,	adēmi,	ademptum,	*to take away.*

The compounds of *prĕmo* likewise change *e* into *ĭ*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Comprĭmo,	comprĭmere,	compressi,	compressum,	*to press together.*
Reprĭmo,	reprimĕre,	repressi,	repressum,	*to press back.*

NO.

Pōno,	ponĕre,	posui,	posĭtum,	*to place.*
Gigno,	gignĕre,	genui,	genĭtum,	*to beget.*
Cănо,	canĕre,	cecĭni,	cantum,	*to sing.*
Temno,*	temnĕre,	———	———	*to despise.*
Sperno,	sperněre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	*to disdain.*
Sterno,	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	*to lay flat.*
Sĭno,	sinĕre,	sĭvi, *or* sii,	sĭtum,	*to permit.*
Lĭno,	linĕre,	līvi, *or* lēvi,	lĭtum,	*to anoint.*
Cerno,	cernĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*to see, decree.*

What is to be remarked of the compounds of *cănо, temno*, and *sterno*?

1. The compounds of *cănо* change *a* into *ĭ*, and have *cinui* and *centum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Concĭno,	conciněre,	concinui,	concentum,	*to sing in concert.*

Most of the compounds of *cănо* have no supine, and many have neither perfect nor supine.

---

* *Contemno* has, perfect, contempsi; supine, contemptum.

2. Compounds of *temno* have both perfect and supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Contemno,	contemnĕre,	contempsi,	contemptum,	*to despise.*

3. The compounds of *sterno* are conjugated like the simple verb. Two of them, however, *consterno* and *externo*, when they have a mental application, and signify to *alarm*, are of the first conjugation; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Consterno,	consternĕre,	constrāvi,	constratum,	*to strew thickly.*
Consterno,	consternāre,	consternāvi,	consternatum,	*to alarm.*

PO, QUO.

Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
Clĕpo,	clepĕre,	clepsi,	cleptum,	*to steal.*
Rēpo,	repĕre,	repsi,	reptum,	*to creep.*
Scalpo,	scalpĕre,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	*to engrave.*
Sculpo,	sculpĕre,	sculpsi,	sculptum,	*to carve.*
Serpo,	serpĕre,	serpsi,	serptum,	*to creep.*
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	*to make a noise.*
Rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	*to break.*
Cŏquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	*to boil.*
Linquo,	linquĕre,	līqui,	———	*to leave.*

What changes do some of the verbs in *po* and *quo* undergo when compounded?

1. The compounds of *carpo* change *a* into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Discerpo,	discerpĕre,	discerpsi,	discerptum,	*to tear to pieces.*

2. The compounds of *linquo* have a supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Delinquo,	delinquĕre,	delīqui,	delictum,	*to fail.*
Relinquo,	relinquĕre,	relīqui,	relictum,	*to forsake.*

RO.

Quæro,	quærĕre,	quæsīvi,	quæsītum,	*to seek.*
Tĕro,	terĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	*to wear away.*
Verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	*to sweep.*
Uro,	urĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	*to burn.*
Curro,	currĕre,	cucurri,	cursum,	*to run.*
Gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	*to carry.*
Fŭro,	furĕre,	———	———	*to be mad.*
Sĕro,	serĕre,	sēvi,	sătum,	*to sow.*

What is to be remarked of *quæro*, *curro*, and *sĕro?*

1. *Quæro*, when compounded, changes *æ* into *ī*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Acquīro,	acquirĕre,	acquisīvi,	acquisītum,	*to acquire.*
Conquīro,	conquirĕre,	conquisīvi,	conquisītum,	*to seek after.*

2. *Curro*, when compounded with *circum*, *re*, *sub*, and *trans*, seldom takes the reduplication; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Accurro,	accurrĕre,	accurri,	accursum,	*to run to.*
Recurro,	recurrĕre,	recurri,	recursum,	*to run back.*

3. The compounds of *sĕro* which relate to *planting* and *sowing* have *sēvi*, *sĭtum*; those of a different signification have *serui*, *sertum*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Consĕro,	conserĕre,	consēvi,	consĭtum,	*to plant together.*
Assĕro,	asserĕre,	asserui,	assertum,	*to claim.*
		SO.		
Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	*to call, send for.*
Capesso,	capessĕre,	capessīvi,	capessītum,	*to take up.*
Facesso,	facessĕre,	facessīvi,	facessītum,	*to do, go away.*
Lacesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessīvi,	lacessītum,	*to provoke.*
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessi,	———	*to attack.*
Vīso,	visĕre,	vīsi,	———	*to go to visit.*
Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	depstum,	*to knead.*
Pinso,	pinsĕre,	pinsui, *or* pinsi,	pinsum, pistum, pinsītum,	*to bake.*
		TO.		
Flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	*to bend.*
Plecto,	plectĕre,	plexi *and* plexui,	plexum,	*to plait.*
Necto,	nectĕre,	nexi *and* nexui,	nexum,	*to tie, knit.*
Pecto,	pectĕre,	pexi *and* pexui,	pexum,	*to dress, comb.*
Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	*to reap.*
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petīvi,	petītum,	*to seek.*
Mitto,	mittĕre,	mīsi,	missum,	*to send.*
Verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	*to turn.*
Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	———	*to snore.*
Sisto,	sistĕre,	stĭti,	stătum,	*to stop.*

What is to be remarked of *verto* and *sisto?*

1. The compounds of *verto* are conjugated like the simple verb; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Converto,	convertĕre,	converti,	conversum,	*to turn to.*

But *reverto, diverto,* and *præverto* have corresponding deponent forms, which are thus conjugated:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Revertor,	reverti,	reversus sum,	*to turn back.*
Divertor,	diverti,	diversus sum,	*to turn aside.*
Prævertor,	præverti,	præversus sum,	*to outrun, prefer.*

2. *Sisto,* in the sense of *stand still,* has neither perfect nor supine. Its compounds have *stĭti* and *stĭtum,* but seldom the supine; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Assisto,	assistĕre,	astĭti,	astĭtum,	*to stand by.*
		VO, XO.		
Vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	*to live.*
Solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	solūtum,	*to loose.*
Volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	volutum,	*to roll.*
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	texum,	*to weave.*

Fourth Conjugation.

What are the regular terminations of verbs of the fourth conjugation?

The regular terminations of verbs of the fourth conjugation are *io, īre, īvi, ītum;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*to hear.*
Munio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	*to fortify.*

Conjugate the following, which are exceptions:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Singultio,	singultīre,	singultīvi,	singultum,	*to sob.*
Sepelio,	sepelīre,	sepelīv	sepultum,	*to bury.*
Venio,	venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	*to come.*
Veneo,	venīre,	venii,	———	*to be sold.*
Salio,	salīre,	salui, *or* salii,	saltum,	*to leap.*

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Amicio,	amicīre,	amicui, *or* amixi,	amictum,	*to clothe.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*to bind.*
Sancio,	sancīre,	sanxi, *or* sancīvi,	sanctum, *or* sancītum,	*to ratify.*
Cambio,	cambīre,	campsi,	campsum,	*to change money.*
Sēpio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	*to inclose.*
Haurio,	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum, *or* hausum,	*to draw out.*
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,	*to feel.*
Raucio,	raucire,	rausi,	rausum,	*to be hoarse.*
Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsi,	sartum,	*to mend, repair.*
Farcio,	farcīre,	farsi,	farctum,	*to cram.*
Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	*to prop.*
Fĕrio,	ferīre,	———	———	*to strike.*

What is to be remarked of the compounds of *salio* and *farcio?*

1. The compounds of *salio* change *a* into *i*; and in the supine into *u*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Desilio,	desilīre,	desilui, *or* desilii,	desultum,	*to leap down.*
Transilio,	transilīre,	transilui, *or* transilii,	transultum,	*to leap across.*

2. The compounds of *farcio* change *a* into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
Refercio,	refercīre,	refersi,	refertum,	*to fill up.*

How are the perfect and supine of *ferio* supplied?

The perfect and supine of *ferio* are supplied from *percutio*, to strike: *percussi*, *percussum.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Are there any irregularities in the conjugation of deponent verbs of the first conjugation?

All deponent verbs of the first conjugation are regular, and are conjugated like the passive voice of *amo;* as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Adulor,	adulāri,	adulātus,	*to flatter.*
Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus,	*to endeavor.*
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus,	*to admire.*
Suspĭcor,	suspicāri,	suspicātus,	*to suspect.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Conjugate the following deponent verbs of the second conjugation, irregular in the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Fateor,	fatēri,	fassus,	*to confess.*
Liceor,	licēri,	licĭtus,	*to bid a price.*
Medeor,	medēri,	———	*to cure.*
Mereor,	merēri,	merĭtus,	*to deserve.*
Misereor,	miserēri,	miserĭtus, *or* misertus,	*to pity.*
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicĭtus,	*to promise.*
Reor,	rēri,	rătus,	*to think.*
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuĭtus, *or* tūtus,	*to protect.*
Vereor,	verēri,	verĭtus,	*to fear.*

What change is made in the compounds of *fateor?*

The compounds of *fateor* change *a* into *i*; and in the supines into *e*; as,

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Confiteor,	confitēri,	confessus,	*to confess.*

But *diffiteor*, to deny, has no perfect participle.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Conjugate the following deponent verbs of the third conjugation, irregular in the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.	
Apiscor,	apisci,	aptus,	*to get.*
Expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	*to awake.*
Fruor,	frui,	fruĭtus, *or* fructus,	*to enjoy.*
Gradior,	grădi,	gressus,	*to go.*
Lābor,	lābi,	lapsus,	*to fall, slide.*
Lŏquor,	lŏqui,	locūtus,	*to speak.*
Morior,	mŏri, *or* morīri,	mortuus,	*to die.*
Nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus,	*to obtain.*
Nascor,	nasci,	nātus,	*to be born.*
Nītor,	nīti,	nīsus, *or* nixus,	*to strive.*
Obliviscor,	oblivisci,	oblītus,	*to forget.*
Paciscor,	pacisci,	pactus,	*to bargain.*
Patior,	păti,	passus,	*to suffer.*
Proficiscor,	proficisci,	profectus,	*to depart.*

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Quĕror,	quĕri,	questus,	*to complain.*
Sĕquor,	sĕqui,	secūtus,	*to follow.*
Ulciscor,	ulcisci,	ultus,	*to avenge, punish.*
Utor,	ūti,	ūsus,	*to use.*

What is to be remarked of the compounds of *apiscor?*

Adispicor and *indipiscor*, to obtain, make the perfect participle *adeptus*, *indeptus*.

What is to be remarked of *morior* and *nascor?*

The future participles of *morior* and *nascor* have *ĭturus;* as, *morĭturus*, *nascĭturus*.

Conjugate the following verbs, which want the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	
Defitiscor,	defitisci,	*to be weary.*
Irascor,	irasci,	*to be angry.*
Lĭquor,	lĭqui,	*to melt.*
Reminiscor,	reminisci,	*to remember.*
Ringor,	ringi,	*to grin like a dog.*
Vescor.	vesci,	*to feed.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Conjugate the following deponent verbs of the fourth conjugation, irregular in the perfect participle:

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.	PERFECT.	
Assentior,	assentīri,	assensus,	*to assent.*
Experior,	experīri,	expertus,	*to try.*
Mĕtior,	metīri,	mensus,	*to measure.*
Opperior,	opperīri,	opertus,	*to wait for.*
Ordior,	ordīri,	orsus,	*to begin.*
Orior,	orīri,	ortus,	*to rise.*

What is to be remarked of *orior?*

Orior in some of its parts belongs to the fourth conjugation, and in others to the third. Its future participle is *orĭturus*.

THINGS USEFUL TO BE KNOWN.

ROMAN ARMY.

1 Century = 100 men.
2 Centuries = 200 men = 1 Maniple.
3 Maniples = 600 men = 1 Cohort.
10 Cohorts = 6,000 men = 1 Legion.

The Century was seldom full, so that the Legion usually consisted of less than 6,000 men. Ordinarily it was between 3,000 and 5,000, or about 4,000 men.

1 *Decuria* = 10 horsemen.
3 *Decuriæ* = 30 horsemen = 1 Turma.
10 *Turmæ* = 300 horsemen = the Cavalry of a Legion.

The *Velites* were light-armed troops, who fought in scattered parties as occasion demanded, usually in front of the lines, and were the first to engage.

A *Consular Army* consisted of 2 Legions, together with the allied horse and foot; in all about 20,000 men.

In time of battle the army was drawn up in three lines:

1. The *Hastati*, young men in the flower of life;
2. The *Principes*, men of middle age, in the vigor of life;
3. The *Triarii*, old soldiers of approved valor.

The *Centurio Primi Pili*, or simply *Primus Pilus*, was the chief centurion.

A *Decurio* was the commander of 10 horsemen.

The *Dux Turmæ* commanded the whole body of horsemen.

The *Præfectus* was commander of the allies.

A *Military Tribune* commanded about 1,000 men.

The *Quæstor* was the treasurer and paymaster of the army.

The whole army was commanded by a *Consul* in person, or by his lieutenant-general, called a *Legatus*.

The *Prætorium* was the general's tent.

The *Cohors Prætoria* was the general's body-guard.

Exercitus is the army in camp, or in general.
Agmen, the army on the march.
Acies, the army drawn up for battle.

The camp had four gates. The two principal ones were:

1. The *Porta Prætoria*, in front, toward the enemy;
2. The *Porta Decumana*, at the back, from the enemy.

TIME.

1. Day and Night.

The Romans divided the day, from sunrise to sunset, into twelve hours.

They divided the night, from sunset to sunrise, into four watches.

2. Months.

The Romans did not divide their months into weeks, but reckoned by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. Nor did they reckon forward, as we do, but *backward;* that is, in reckoning from the Kalends to the Nones they said it was so many days *before* the Nones; from the Nones to the Ides, so many days *before* the Ides; and from the Ides to the end of the month, so many days *before* the Kalends of the next month.

The *Kalends* were the first day of the month.

The *Nones* the fifth; nine days before the Nones (including both).

The *Ides* the thirteenth, which nearly divided the month into two equal parts.

But in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell two days later: that is, on the 7th; consequently, in the same months, the Ides fell on the 15th.

The day before each of these divisions was called *Pridie;* thus the 4th of January was called *pridie nonas Januarii;* the 14th of March, *pridie ides Martii;* and the 31st of October, *pridie kalendas Novembris.*

To turn Roman time into ours, if the day be between the Kalends and the Nones, or between the Nones and Ides:

Rule.—Add 1 to the latter division, and subtract the given day.

Example: What is the 4th day before the Nones of January?

(Nones) $5 + 1 = 6$, and $6 - 4 = 2$d of January. *Ans.*

What is the 7th day before the Ides of March?

(Ides) $15 + 1 = 16$, and $16 - 7 = 9$th of March. *Ans.*

If the day be between the Ides and the Kalends:

RULE.—Add 2 to the number of days in the month named, and subtract the given day.

Example: What is the 10th day before the Kalends of January?

(January) $31 + 2 = 33$, and $33 - 10 = 23$d of December. *Ans.*

What is the 12th day before the Kalends of September?

(September) $30 + 2 = 32$, and $32 - 12 = 20$th of August. *Ans.*

A *Lustrum* was a period of *five* years.

ROMAN MONEY.

An *As*, a copper coin, was worth about 1 cent 5 mills.
A *Sestertius*, silver, was worth about . . 3 cents 8 mills.
A *Denarius*, silver, was worth about . 15 cents 5 mills.

NOTE.—A *Sestertius* was a *coin;* a *Sestertium*, a *sum* of money = 1,000 *Sestertii* = $38. Large sums were usually reckoned by *Sestertia.*

MEASURES.

A *Passus* was about *five* feet.

A *Roman Mile* (*Mille Passus*) = 5,000 feet, a little less than our mile (5,280 feet).

A *Jugerum* was about five eighths of an acre.

AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

A MANUAL

OF THE

ART OF PROSE COMPOSITION,

By JOHN M. BONNELL, D. D.

In the preparation of this work, it has been no part of the compiler's aim to be original. He has sought rather to select from the various treatises on this subject those rules and exercises which have been approved by the experience of teachers, and to combine them into one consistent whole, arranged with reference to the progressive development of the learner's powers.—*Extract from the Preface.*

The author disclaims originality, and yet is more original than nine tenths of less modest writers. The volume bears evident marks of being the work of a practical and experienced teacher. As a whole it comes nearer to our idea of what a manual on this subject should be for the ordinary classes of students in our Academies and High Schools than any other that we have seen.—*American Educational Monthly, New York, March*, 1868.

The result of practical thought in the class-room, it is precisely such a series of illustrations and views of the subject as most teachers have found it necessary to prepare for themselves.—*The Round Table, New York, March*, 1868.

It is a capital work in plan and execution, and worthy of introduction into our best institutions of learning.—*N. Lawrence Lindsley, Lebanon, Tenn.*

It is just the book that is needed in our schools. It is admirable for its conciseness, its comprehensiveness, the accuracy of its definitions, and the appropriateness of its examples.—*W. Shelton, President West Tennessee College.*

I consider it an admirable compilation. The arrangement of the whole work is philosophical, and the chapters on Invention and Expression are very complete.—*Charles Taylor, President Kentucky Wesleyan University.*

A treatise well calculated to serve as a text-book in schools and colleges, and at the same time just such a guide as very many of our young professional and business men greatly need.—*J. Berrien Lindsley, Chancellor University of Nashville.*

I am very well pleased with it. The plan is excellent, and I think the execution well sustained.—*John N. Waddell, LL. D., Chancellor University of Mississippi.*

A text-book of rare merit.—*R. D. Mallory, Union Female Academy, Eufaula, Ala.*

I have long wanted just such a help in the school-room.—*A. L. Hamilton, Pres't Andrew Female College, Cuthbert, Ga.*

We consider it superior to any other work of the kind which has ever come under our notice.—*Georgie A. Hulse McLeod, Southern Literary Institute, Baltimore.*

It is decidedly the most complete and exhaustive treatise that I have seen.—*W. H. Stuart, Columbia, Ky.*

Retail Price, ... $1.50.

On receipt of which it will be sent, postage paid, to any address.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,

PUBLISHERS,

156 AND 158 WEST MAIN STREET, LOUISVILLE, KY.

AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

BRONSON'S SYSTEM OF ELOCUTION;

OR,

MENTAL AND VOCAL PHILOSOPHY,

Involving the principles of READING AND SPEAKING, and designed for the development and cultivation of BODY AND MIND, in accordance with the NATURE, USES, AND DESTINY OF MAN, illustrated by some *three hundred* choice Anecdotes, *three thousand* Oratorical and Poetical Readings, *five thousand* Proverbs, Maxims, and Laconics, and *several hundred* Engravings. It contains:

I. All the principles of Elocution, in accordance with Physiological and Mental Science. II. *Six full length Views* of the Nerves of Organic Life, of Respiration, of the Nerves of Sense and Motion, and of all the Muscles and Bones of the whole Body, clothed and unclothed. III. Natural and Deformed Chests, Positions of Ladies and Gentlemen—of their Bodies, Hands, Arms, and Feet, and *one hundred* full length Oratorical and Poetical Portraits. IV. *Forty-four Mouths*, showing every position to produce the *forty-four sounds* of our Language. V. The Common, and the New Mode of learning the Letters—of Spelling, and of Teaching Children to Read—involving the Science of Phonology. VI. Several hundred Jaw or Muscle-breakers, for Training the Voice—while "Laughter holds both of his sides." VII. *Fifty engravings*, exhibiting all the Phases of Passion, with appropriate examples to illustrate them. VIII. An immense number of Questions and Subjects suggested for Lyceums, Debating Societies, and Social Parties. IX. The largest and best collection of *Readings*, *Recitations*, and *Declamations*. X. It is expressly prepared for use in all *Schools*, *Academies*, and *Colleges*, Male and Female; and also with particular reference to Private Readers and Learners.

ITS COMPARATIVE MERITS.

I. An examination of its contents and their arrangement will enable one to institute a comparison between this work and all others on the same subject.

II. It is in perfect harmony with what is known of all that is NATURAL, HUMAN, and DIVINE.

III. Its foundations are deeply laid in the Philosophy of Mind and Voice—Spirit and Matter; and the principles are of a far-reaching and comprehensive nature.

IV. Its method is that of ANALYSIS and SYNTHESIS, and is altogether progressive and practical in its characteristics.

V. Although but ONE Elocutionary principle is presented, specifically, on any page, yet each Elementary page contains, incidentally, ALL the principles of Elocution.

VI. These principles have never been known to fail, when faithfully applied, to enable one to read and speak, for hours in succession, without hoarseness or injurious exhaustion.

VII. It is *beautifully* and *substantially* gotten up in octavo form, of between three and four hundred pages, and includes a greater variety of Prose and Poetry than any other system of Elocution, and contains *double* the amount of reading matter found in any similar work in the United States.

Retail Price, ... $2.00.

On receipt of which it will be sent, postage paid, to any address.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,
156 AND 158 W. MAIN ST., LOUISVILLE, KY.,
PUBLISHERS.

AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

TOWNE'S SERIES OF MATHEMATICS,

By P. A. TOWNE,

FORMERLY GENERAL PRINCIPAL OF BARTON ACADEMY, MOBILE, ALABAMA,

CONSISTING OF

TOWNE'S PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. 144 pp.
TOWNE'S INTERMEDIATE ARITHMETIC. 216 pp.
TOWNE'S PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 360 pp.
TOWNE'S ALGEBRA. 290 pp.

CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES.

1. Clear and exhaustive definitions.
2. Early introduction of *Decimal Fractions*
3. Improved operations in solving problems.
4. Its *models* for recitations.
5. Its clear and brief analyses.
6. The beautiful typography of the whole series.

Teachers throughout the country may be assured that the books of the series yet to appear, namely: MENTAL ARITHMETIC, GEOMETRY, TRIGONOMETRY, ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY AND CALCULUS will fall in no respect behind those now before the public. When complete the series will, it is believed, present the fullest and most perfect account of mathematical science yet published.

Copies of the above books will be furnished Teachers and School Committees for examination at half the respective retail prices, and favorable arrangements will be made for introduction in place of other works not in satisfactory use.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,

156 AND 158 WEST MAIN STREET,

LOUISVILLE, KY.,

PUBLISHERS.

AMERICAN STANDARD SCHOOL SERIES.

The FIRST PRINCIPLES OF GEOLOGY,

PRESENTING THE SCIENCE IN ITS PHYSICAL AND MORAL ASPECTS, AND EXHIBITING ITS APPLICATION TO THE ARTS OF MINING, AGRICULTURE, ARCHITECTURE, AND ENGINEERING.

BY WILLIAM J. BARBEE, A. M., M. D.

MEMBER OF THE AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE PROMOTION OF SCIENCE.

The work is illustrated with Engravings, and a Geological Map of the United States. It is divided into five parts:

PART I. contains an account of the Elements of the Globe—their combinations to form Mineral substances; and presents an Exposition of Geological Dynamics. PART II. contains a Classification of Rocks, and a Description of the different Formations. PART III. treats of the Moral Bearings of Geology. PART IV. treats of Geographical Geology. PART V. exhibits the Application of Geology to certain useful Arts.

The following, among numerous testimonials, are presented for the inspection of Teachers:

It evinces a thorough knowledge of the science, and is admirably adapted to schools and colleges.—*President Hitchcock.*

I can cheerfully commend it to all who desire an accurate knowledge of the general principles of Geology. I hope the work will be a success.—*President Barnard, University of Mississippi.*

The author displays profound acquaintance with his favorite department of science and a masterly ability for logical discussion.—*Southern Literary Messenger.*

Dr. BARBEE has written what very few men have ever attempted—an able and *interesting* work on Geology. Able works there were, but scarcely any of them attractive.—*Christian Intelligencer.*

One of the best books on Geology ever issued from any press in Europe or America.—*N. Y. Christian Advocate.*

The subjects are all treated with marked ability.—*National Quarterly Review.*

A most excellent Southern college text-book. May the number of such increase.—*DeBow's Review.*

We need not look to the North, nor to England, for text-books, when the South can produce such a work as Dr. BARBEE has prepared.—*Nashville Medical Journal.*

In treating the Moral Bearings of the science the author presents ten strong arguments for the antiquity of the globe—shows there is no conflict between Scripture and Geology, and directs attention to the proofs of Divine goodness and wisdom.—*Princeton Review.*

One of the most logical works on Geology we ever perused.—*N. Y. Churchman.*

I very fully approve of your work on Geology, and will soon give it an extended notice.—*T. Fanning, President of Franklin College, Tennessee.*

The new edition of Dr. BARBEE'S work on Geology is an able and interesting treatise.—*P. S. Fall, Nashville, Tenn.*

It is the best book of the kind I have seen; remarkable for clearness and simplicity of style, and admirably suited for the use of schools.—*Prof. I. H. Alexander, Kosciusko, Miss.*

It is a most excellent text-book. The style is pure, and the arrangement faultless.—*Prof. I. L. Dyson, Lexington, Miss.*

It is a capital book, and I wish to see it introduced in our schools.—*President T. S. Gathright, of Somerville Institute.*

I like it better than Hitchcock, and will introduce it next session.—*Prof. S. J. Reid, of Holly Springs, Miss.*

I am greatly pleased with BARBEE'S GEOLOGY, and expect to introduce it as a text-book in our school.—*R. T. P. Allen, Sup't Military Institute, Kentucky.*

Retail Price, ... $1.75.

On receipt of which it will be sent, postage paid, to any address.

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,
PUBLISHERS.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 037 325 A